

Building (Amendment) Regulations (Northern Ireland) 2020

EU NOTIFICATION

Technical Book B – Materials and Workmanship

Consultation Draft

August 2020

(closing date for receipt of responses is 4.00 pm Friday 09/10/2020)

Notes:

- 1. Proposed new text is marked in red.**
- 2. Existing text to be deleted is struck through.**

Contents

	Page
Introduction	2
Technical Booklets	2
This Technical Booklet	2
Part B Regulations	4
Guidance – Performance and introduction to provisions	7
Fitness of materials and workmanship (regulation 23 in Part B)	7
Urea formaldehyde foam (regulation 24 in Part B)	8
Section 1 General	9
Definitions	9
Glossary of terms	9
Section 2 Fitness of materials and workmanship	
Suitability of certain materials	13
Non-combustible materials in external walls of tall buildings	14
Ways of establishing the adequacy of workmanship	15
Appendix Publications referred to	18

Technical Booklets

This Technical Booklet, which takes effect on 1st July 2013, is one of a series that has been prepared by the Department of Finance and Personnel (the Department) for the purpose of providing practical guidance with respect to the technical requirements of the Building Regulations (Northern Ireland) 2012 (as amended) (the Building Regulations).

At the back of each Technical Booklet is a list of all the Technical Booklets that have been prepared and published by the Department for this purpose.

The guidance given in a Technical Booklet includes performance standards and design provisions relating to compliance with specific aspects of the Building Regulations for the more common (normal) building situations.

If the guidance in a Technical Booklet is followed there will be a presumption of compliance with the requirements of those Building Regulations covered by that guidance. However, this presumption can be overturned, so simply following the guidance does not guarantee compliance. For example, if a particular circumstance is not one of the more common building situations the design provisions given in the Technical Booklet may not be appropriate.

There are likely to be alternative ways of demonstrating compliance with the relevant requirements of the Building Regulations other than by following a design provision given in a Technical Booklet. There is therefore no obligation to adopt any particular provision set out in a Technical Booklet, should you decide to comply in some other way. However, you will have to demonstrate that your alternative solution meets the relevant requirements of the Building Regulations by those other means.

This Technical Booklet

The guidance contained in this Technical Booklet relates only to the requirements of regulations 23 and 24(2) in Part B. The work will also have to comply with all other requirements of the relevant Building Regulations.

The Building Regulations are made for specific purposes, primarily securing the health, safety, welfare and convenience of people and for the conservation of fuel and power. Standards and technical approvals are relevant guidance to the extent that they relate to these purposes. However, they may also address other aspects of performance such as serviceability, or aspects which although they relate to health and safety are not covered by the Building Regulations.

Where this Technical Booklet makes reference to a named standard, the relevant version of the standard is the one listed in the Appendix. However, if this version has been replaced or updated by the issuing standards body, the new version may be used as a source of guidance provided that it continues to address the relevant requirements of the Building Regulations.

Other Legislation

The Construction Products Regulation (EU 305/2011) requires that construction products that are covered by a harmonised European product standard or conform to a European Technical Assessment should normally have a CE marking.

Consultation
Version
only

Part B Regulations

Part B (comprising regulations 22 to 24) of the Building Regulations, which sets out the requirements for materials and workmanship, has been replicated below for the convenience of the user of this Technical Booklet and is taken directly from the Building Regulations (Northern Ireland) 2012 (as amended), in operation at the date of publication of this Technical Booklet.

Any person who intends to demonstrate compliance with the Building Regulations by following the guidance given in this Technical Booklet is advised to ensure that the regulations below, are current on the date when plans are deposited or notices given to the district council.

As Part A (comprising regulations 1 to 21) of the Building Regulations sets out the interpretation along with the procedural requirements relating to the application of the regulations, the Department advises that all Parts of the Building Regulations are read in conjunction with Part A of those regulations.

The Building Regulations (Northern Ireland) 2012 and any subsequent amendment may be viewed by following the links from the Department's website at "www.finance-ni.gov.uk/articles/building-regulations-northern-ireland" buildingregulationsni.gov.uk."

PART B

Materials and workmanship

Interpretation

22. In this Part—

“External wall” of a building includes a reference to—

- (a) anything located within any space forming part of the wall;
- (b) any decoration or other finish applied to any external (but not internal) surface forming part of the wall;
- (c) any windows and doors in the wall; and
- (d) any part of a roof pitched at an angle of more than 70 degrees to the horizontal if that part of the roof adjoins a space within the building to which persons have access, but not access only for the purpose of carrying out repairs or maintenance.

“Harmful substances” includes fumes and vapours; and

“Relevant work” means—

- (a) the erection of a building;
- (b) the structural alteration or extension of a building;
- (c) the provision of any service or fitting; or
- (d) the backfilling of any excavation carried out in connection with (a), (b) or (c).

“Specified attachment” means—

- (a) a balcony attached to an external wall;
- (b) a device for reducing heat gain within a building by deflecting sunlight which is attached to an external wall; or
- (c) a solar panel attached to an external wall.

Fitness of materials and workmanship

23.— (1) In any relevant work—

- (a) the materials used shall—
 - (i) be of a suitable nature and quality in relation to the purposes for and the conditions in which they are used;
 - (ii) be adequately mixed and prepared;
 - (iii) be applied, used or fixed so as adequately to perform the functions for which they are designed; and
 - (iv) not continue to emit any harmful substance longer than is reasonable in the circumstances; and
- (b) the standards of materials and workmanship need be no more than are necessary to—
 - (i) secure the health, safety, welfare and convenience of persons in or about the building; and
 - (ii) further the conservation of fuel and power.

(2) Subject to paragraph (3), building work shall be carried out so that materials which become part of an external wall, or specified attachment, of a relevant building are of European Classification A2-s1, d0 or Class A1, classified in accordance with BS EN 13501-1:2018.

(3) Paragraph (2) does not apply to—

- (a) cavity trays when used between two leaves of masonry;
- (b) any part of a roof (other than any part of a roof which falls within paragraph (d) of the definition of ‘External wall’ in regulation 22), if that part is connected to an external wall;
- (c) door frames and doors;
- (d) electrical installations;
- (e) insulation and water proofing materials used below ground level;
- (f) intumescent and fire stopping materials where the inclusion of the materials is necessary to meet the requirements of the regulations in Part E.
- (g) membranes;
- (h) seals, gaskets, fixings, sealants and backer rods;
- (i) thermal break materials where the inclusion of the materials is necessary to meet the thermal bridging requirements of the regulations in Part F; or
- (j) window frames and glass.

(4) In this regulation—

- (a) a “relevant building” means a building with a storey (not including roof-top plant areas or any storey consisting exclusively of plant rooms) at least 18 metres above ground level and which—
 - (i) contains one or more dwellings;
 - (ii) contains an institution; or
 - (iii) contains a room for residential purposes (excluding any room in a hostel, hotel or boarding house); and
- (b) “above ground level” in relation to a storey means above ground level when measured from the lowest ground level adjoining the outside of a building to the top of the floor surface of the storey.

Urea formaldehyde foam

24.—(1) Subject to paragraph (2), in-situ foamed urea formaldehyde shall not be used in the erection, structural alteration or extension of a building.

(2) In-situ foamed urea formaldehyde may be used for filling the cavity of a cavity wall having an inner leaf constructed of bricks or blocks, provided that it is—

- (a) suitable for such an application; and
- (b) satisfactorily installed.

Consultation
Version
only

Fitness of materials and workmanship (regulation 23 in Part B)

Performance

- 0.1 It is the view of the Department that the requirements of regulation 23 in Part B will be met where –
- (a) materials are of a suitable nature and quality in relation to the purposes and conditions of their use; and
 - (b) the workmanship is such that –
 - (i) where relevant, materials are adequately mixed or prepared;
 - (ii) materials are applied, used or fixed so as to perform adequately the functions for which they are intended; and
 - (c) materials do not continue to emit any harmful substance longer than is reasonable in the circumstances.
- 0.2 To be of a suitable nature and quality, materials –
- (a) for use as the weather-resisting part of an external wall or roof should not rely on being painted, or coated, surfaced or rendered with any other material which when used, does not in itself constitute effective resistance against weather; or
 - (b) which depend on periodic maintenance, replacement or renewal for suitability should be readily accessible or positioned so that such maintenance, replacement or renewal is practicable.

Limitations

- 0.3 Regulation 23 in Part B applies across all of the substantive Parts of the Building Regulations.

Regulation 23(b) of Part B limits the standards of materials and workmanship to be no more than necessary to –

- (a) secure the health, safety, welfare and convenience of persons in or about the building; and
- (b) further the conservation of fuel and power.

Introduction to provisions in Section 2

- 0.4 The guidance in Section 2 is to provide aids which –
- (a) may be used for establishing the suitability of a material for use for a specific purpose; and
 - (b) may be used to establish the adequacy of workmanship.

The guidance also addresses the suitability of certain materials such as short lived materials and materials susceptible to changes in their properties. Specific provisions are given regarding materials likely to be adversely affected by moisture or by harmful substances in the sub-soil.

Urea formaldehyde foam (regulation 24 in Part B)

Performance

- 0.5 Regulation 24(1) in Part B prohibits the use of urea formaldehyde foam subject to the provisions of regulation 24(2) in Part B.

It is the view of the Department that the requirements of regulation 24(2) in Part B will be met if the risks to the health of persons in buildings are eliminated or reduced to an extent whereby any formaldehyde fumes given off by urea formaldehyde foam filling the cavity of a cavity wall does not give rise to an irritant concentration. This can be achieved by ensuring that the inner leaf of the cavity wall provides a suitable barrier to the passage of formaldehyde fumes.

Introduction to provisions in Section 3

- 0.6 The guidance in this Section is to ensure reasonable precautions are taken to eliminate or reduce to an acceptable level, the permeation of toxic fumes into a building when urea formaldehyde foam has been inserted into the cavity of a cavity wall.

Consultation
Version
only

- 1.1 In this Technical Booklet the following definitions and glossary of terms apply –

Definitions

- 1.2 **Harmful substances** – has the meaning assigned to it by regulation 22 in Part B of the Building Regulations.

Materials – has the meaning assigned to it by regulation 2 in Part A of the Building Regulations.

Glossary of terms

- 1.3 **BSI** – The British standard Institution, is the UK national Standards body. BSI publishes European standards in the UK as BS EN. Further information is available at www.bsigroup.co.uk

CEN – The Comité Européen de Normalisation, is the European standards body that prepares harmonised European product standards. Declarations of performance against such standards should provide sufficient information for any Member State to allow the product onto its market and for specifiers and users to be able to assess whether the product is suitable for its intended use.

CEN also prepares non-harmonised European standards such as test or calculation standards and standards for products or services that have not been mandated under a CE marking Directive. It does not issue standards directly, only through national standard bodies; BSI is the designated standard body for the UK

Further information is available at www.cen.eu

EA – European co-operation on Accreditation, is the umbrella organisation for all new national accreditation bodies in Europe. Product certification bodies, inspection bodies and test laboratories approved by national accreditation bodies belonging to the EA are equivalent to those approved by UKAS. For further information see: www.european-accreditation.org

European Technical Assessment – A favourable technical assessment issued under the European Construction Products Regulation 2011 that allows manufacturers to affix CE markings on its products. Further information is available at www.eota.eu

ISO – International Organisation for Standardisation, is the worldwide federation of national standards institutions. Standards are identified by 'ISO' and a number. ISO standards may be published separately or transposed into the UK as BS ISO or BS EN ISO. Further information is available at www.iso.org

NANDO – New Approach Notified and Designated Organisations is an information system produced by the European Commission. It lists the harmonised European standards and the bodies notified by member states to carry out conformity assessment tasks for CE marking. Further information is available at:
<http://ec.europa.eu/enterprise/newapproach/nando>

UKAS – the United Kingdom Accreditation Service is the sole national accreditation body recognised by the UK government to assess, against internationally agreed standards, organisations that provide certification, testing, inspection and calibration services. accreditation by UKAS demonstrates the competence, impartiality and performance capability of these organisations. Further information is available at www.ukas.com

Consultation
Version
only

Materials

General

- 2.1 Technical Booklets contain references to materials covered by harmonised European product standards, British Standards and other technical specifications. However, as there is no obligation to adopt any particular solution contained in a Technical Booklet in order to meet a functional requirement, the references are not exclusive and other materials may be suitable in the particular circumstances

Ways of establishing the fitness of materials

- 2.2 There are a number of ways in which the suitability of a material for use for a specific purpose may be assessed. The following are examples of ways which may be used for establishing this (see paragraphs 2.3 to 2.10).

CE marking under the Construction Products Regulation

- 2.3 Many materials are construction products that have CE marking under the Construction Products Regulation (EU 305/2011).

The Construction Products Regulation requires that construction products on the EU market covered by a harmonised European product standard should normally have CE marking. In addition, manufacturers of products not covered by a harmonised standard can choose to affix CE marking to their products by obtaining a European Technical Assessment.

(You can find a list of the harmonised product standards under the Construction Products Regulation on the NANDO information system website at:

<http://ec.europa.eu/enterprise/newapproach/nando/index.cfm?fuseaction=cpd.hs>)

The CE marking includes the reference of the product standard and levels or classes of performance being declared against some or all of the characteristics covered by the standard. The CE marking should be on the product, its label, the packaging or accompanying documents. The CE symbol by itself does not necessarily indicate that the material is suitable for the building work.

In addition to CE marking, the product will have a Declaration of Performance containing more detailed information on the product. This may be a paper or electronic document, or it may be on a website.

It is essential to check that the declared performance is suitable for the building work.

In the absence of indications to the contrary, for those verifying compliance with the Building Regulations, it is reasonable to assume that the information in the CE marking and Declaration of Performance is accurate and reliable, and that the product meets the declared performance.

If the declared performance of a product is suitable for its intended use, then such use should not be prohibited or impeded.

CE marking under other EU Directives and Regulations

- 2.4 Products may also be CE marked under European legislation, such as the Gas Appliances Directive or the Pressure Equipment Directive. Such CE marking shows that the product meets the essential requirements set out in the relevant legislation – for example, minimum safety requirements – and can be placed on the EU market .

Some products will have CE marking in accordance with both the Construction Products Regulation and other legislation. The CE marking shows that the product complies with the requirements in all relevant EU legislation.

British Standards

- 2.5 Nearly all British Standards for construction products are the British versions of the harmonised European standards (ENs) used for CE marking. The BSI numbering policy is to adopt the CEN numbering, prefaced with BS e.g. BS EN 197-1.

Some British Standards are the British versions of non-harmonised European standards; these also adopt the CEN numbering, prefaced with BS. These do not contain an Annex ZA, so CE marking cannot be affixed to products made to these standards.

Some British Standards for products not covered by a European standard will continue to exist.

Where a construction product has been made and assessed in accordance with one or more British Standard described in the two preceding paragraphs, may show whether or not the product is suitable for its intended use.

Other national and international technical specifications

- 2.6 An international technical specification, including those prepared by ISO, or a national technical specification of a country other than the UK, may be used to demonstrate that a product not covered by a harmonised European standard meets the performance requirements of the Building Regulations.

Where necessary, the person intending to carry out the work should obtain translations of specifications and demonstrate to the district council how the material meets the requirements of regulation 23 in Part B.

It should be noted that the national technical specifications of EU Member States (and non-EU countries that are full members of CEN) are being progressively replaced by harmonised European standards, as is the case with British Standards.

Independent certification schemes

- 2.7 The material has certified compliance under an independent certification scheme. There are many independent certification schemes in the UK and elsewhere that may provide information on the performance of a material. Such schemes certify that a material complies with the requirements of a recognised document and is suitable for its intended purpose and use. These may be in addition to, but not conflict with, CE marking.

It should be noted that materials which are not certified by an independent scheme may still conform to a relevant standard.

Accreditation of a certification body by a national accreditation body belonging to the European co-operation for Accreditation (EA) provides a means of demonstrating that their certification scheme can be relied upon. In the UK, most independent certification bodies are accredited by the United Kingdom Accreditation Service (UKAS), who belong to the EA.

It is important to check the scope of the accreditation of certification bodies as accreditation may cover only part of the certification body's testing or certification business

Tests and calculations

- 2.8 Where there is no relevant harmonised European standard, tests, calculation or other means may be used to demonstrate that the material can perform the function for which it is intended. UKAS or an equivalent national accreditation body belonging to the EA may accredit the testing laboratories; this accreditation provides a means of showing that the tests can be relied on.

Past experience

- 2.9 Past experience, such as in a building in use, may show that the material is capable of performing the function for which it is intended.

Sampling

- 2.10 Regulation 16 in Part A allows a district council to take, as it considers necessary, samples of materials either used or to be used in building work, to establish if that material complies with the provisions of the Building Regulations.

Suitability of certain materials

Short-lived materials

- 2.11 Some materials, in the absence of special care, may be considered unsuitable because of their rapid deterioration in relation to the expected life of the building.

A short-lived material which is readily accessible for inspection, maintenance and replacement may meet the requirements of the Building Regulations provided that the consequences of failure are not likely to be serious in regard to the health or safety of persons in and around the building.

Where a short-lived material is not readily accessible for inspection and maintenance or replacement and the consequences of failure are likely to be serious with regard to health or safety, it is unlikely that the material will meet the requirements of the Building Regulations.

(Paragraph 0.2 describes circumstances in which materials may be considered to be of a suitable nature and quality.)

Materials susceptible to changes in their properties

- 2.12 Some materials may undergo changes to their properties when they are exposed to certain environmental conditions which may affect their performance over time.

Materials that are susceptible to changes in their properties may be used in building work where these changes do not adversely affect their performance. Such material will meet the requirements of the Building Regulations provided that their final residual properties, including their structural properties, meet both of the following conditions –

- (a) residual properties can be estimated at the time of their incorporation in the work; and
- (b) residual properties are shown to be adequate for the building to perform the function for which it is intended for the expected life of the building.

Resistance to moisture

- 2.13 Any material which is likely to be adversely affected by moisture from the ground, weather or condensation will be suitable if –
- (a) the construction will resist the passage of moisture to the material; or
 - (b) the material is treated or otherwise protected from moisture.

Resistance to substances in the subsoil

- 2.14 Any material in contact with the ground or in the foundations will be suitable if it is capable of resisting attacks by deleterious material in the subsoil such as sulphates.

Non-combustible materials in external walls of tall buildings

- 2.14 A The Building Regulations restrict the use of combustible materials in the external walls of certain buildings over 18m in height. Refer to regulation 23 of the Building Regulations and to Technical Booklet E, section 5 for details.

Workmanship

Ways of establishing the adequacy of workmanship

- 2.15 The following are examples of ways which may be used to establish the adequacy of workmanship (see paragraphs 2.16 to 2.22).

CE marking

- 2.16 If a material has CE marking, workmanship may be specified in the relevant European Technical Assessment or harmonised product standard.

Standards

- 2.17 Methods of carrying out different types of work are also given in British Standards or other appropriate technical specifications. (Note: the BS 8000 series of standards on Workmanship on building sites combines guidance from other BSI Codes and Standards. See Appendix.)

Independent certification schemes

- 2.18 Some independent certification schemes specify how workmanship will deliver a declared level of performance. The person carrying out the work should show that the workmanship will provide the appropriate level of protection and performance.

Management systems

- 2.19 The quality of workmanship is covered by a quality management scheme such as one that complies with the relevant recommendations of BS EN ISO 9000, and related series of standards. There are a number of such UKAS accredited schemes.

2.20 Past experience

Past experience of workmanship, such as in a building in use, may show that the method of workmanship is capable of performing the function for which it is intended.

Tests

- 2.21 Tests can be used to show that workmanship is appropriate.

In the following two instances, the Building Regulations require those carrying out building work to have testing carried out to demonstrate compliance -

- (a) sound insulation testing as required by regulation 53 in Part G of the Building Regulations; and
- (b) testing of fixed mechanical ventilation systems and any associated controls as required by regulation 65 in Part K of the Building Regulations.

Pressure testing may be used to demonstrate compliance with regulation 40(2) in Part F. However, it should be noted that such pressure testing is not a requirement of the Building Regulations; the circumstances of the building and its design parameters may allow the designer/builder to demonstrate compliance by means other than testing.

- 2.22 A district council has the power to require tests as prescribed in regulation 15 in Part A of the Building Regulations, to be carried out in relation to drains and private sewers as necessary, to establish compliance with Part N of the Building Regulations. These prescribed tests may also be carried out by that district council.
- 2.23 Regulation 16 in Part A allows a district council to take, as it considers necessary, samples of materials to be used in building work, to establish if the adequacy of workmanship relating to the use of that material complies with the relevant requirements of the Building Regulations.

Consultation
Version
only

General provisions

- 3.1 Other than the circumstances outlined in 3.2 urea formaldehyde foam should not be used in the erection, structural alteration or extension of a building.
- 3.2 Foam insulating materials which give off formaldehyde fumes either when used or later in normal use, may be used to insulate the cavity in a cavity wall where there is a continuous barrier which will minimise, as far as practicable, the passage of fumes into the building. BS 8208-1 gives guidance on factors to be considered when assessing the suitability of existing masonry external cavity walls for filling with thermal insulants.
- 3.3 A cavity wall which has been determined to be suitable for foam filling may be insulated with urea formaldehyde foam where –
- (a) the inner leaf of the wall is built of masonry (bricks or blocks);
 - (b) the person carrying out the work holds (or operates under) a current Certificate of Registration of Assessed Capability for the work to be undertaken;
 - (c) the in-situ foamed urea formaldehyde is manufactured in accordance with the relevant recommendations of BS 5617; and
 - (d) the installation is in accordance with BS 5618.

Appendix Publications referred to

BS EN ISO 9000: 2005	Quality management systems. Fundamentals and vocabulary.
BS EN ISO 9001: 2008	Quality management systems. Requirements.
BS EN 13501-1: 2018	Fire Classification of construction products and building elements. Classification using data from reaction to fire tests.
BS 5617: 1985	Specifications for urea formaldehyde (UF) foam systems suitable for thermal insulation of cavity walls with masonry or concrete inner and outer leaves.
BS 5618: 1985	Code of practice for thermal insulation of cavity walls (with masonry or concrete inner and outer leaves) by filling with urea formaldehyde (UF) foam systems. AMD 6262 1990, AMD 7114 1992.
BS 8000-1: 1989	Workmanship on building sites. Code of practice for excavation and filling.
BS 8000-2-1: 1990	Workmanship on building sites. Code of practice for concrete work. Mixing and transporting concrete. AMD 9324 1997.
BS 8000-2-2: 1990	Workmanship on building sites. Code of practice for concrete work. Sitework with in situ and precast concrete.
BS 8000-3: 2001	Workmanship on building sites. Code of practice for masonry.
BS 8000-4: 1989	Workmanship on building sites. Code of practice for waterproofing.
BS 8000-5: 1990	Workmanship on building sites. Code of practice for carpentry, joinery and general fixings.
BS 8000-6: 1990	Workmanship on building sites. Code of practice for slating and tiling of roofs and claddings.
BS 8000-7: 1990	Workmanship on building sites. Code of practice for glazing.
BS 8000-8: 1994	Workmanship on building sites. Code of practice for plasterboard partitions and dry linings.
BS 8000-9: 2003	Workmanship on building sites. Cementitious levelling screeds and wearing screeds. Code of practice.

BS 8000-11: 2011	Workmanship on building sites. Internal and external wall and floor tiling. Ceramic and agglomerated stone tiles, natural stone and terrazzo tiles and slabs, and mosaics. Code of practice.
BS 8000-12: 1989	Workmanship on building sites. Code of practice for decorative wallcoverings and painting.
BS 8000-13: 1989	Workmanship on building sites. Code of practice for above ground drainage and sanitary appliances.
BS 8000-14: 1989	Workmanship on building sites. Code of practice for below ground drainage.
BS 8000-15: 1990	Workmanship on building sites. Code of practice for hot and cold water services (domestic scale).
BS 8000-16: 1997+A1:2010	Workmanship on building sites. Code of practice for sealing joints in buildings using sealants.
BS 8208-1: 1985	Guide to assessment of suitability of external cavity walls for filling with thermal insulants. Existing traditional cavity construction. AMD 4996 1985.

Consultation
Version only

Technical Booklets

The following list comprises the series of Technical Booklets prepared by the Department for the purpose of providing practical guidance with respect to the technical requirements of the Building Regulations (Northern Ireland) 2012 (as amended).

Technical Booklet B	Materials and workmanship
Technical Booklet C	Preparation of site and resistance to contaminants and moisture
Technical Booklet D	Structure
Technical Booklet E	Fire safety
Technical Booklet F1	Conservation of fuel and power in dwellings
Technical Booklet F2	Conservation of fuel and power in buildings other than dwellings
Technical Booklet G	Resistance to the passage of sound
Technical Booklet H	Stairs, ramps, guarding and protection from impact
Technical Booklet J	Solid waste in buildings
Technical Booklet K	Ventilation
Technical Booklet L	Combustion appliances and fuel storage systems
Technical Booklet M	Physical infrastructure for high-speed electronic communications networks
Technical Booklet N	Drainage
Technical Booklet P	Sanitary appliances, unvented hot water storage systems and reducing the risk of scalding
Technical Booklet R	Access to and use of buildings
Technical Booklet V	Glazing

Any person who intends to demonstrate compliance with the Building Regulations by following the guidance given in a Technical Booklet is advised to ensure that the guidance is current on the date when plans are deposited or notice given to the district council.

Building (Amendment) Regulations (Northern Ireland) 2020

EU NOTIFICATION

Technical Booklet C – Site preparation and resistance to contaminants and moisture

Consultation Draft

August 2020

(closing date for receipt of responses is 4.00 pm Friday 09/10/2020)

Notes:

- 1. Proposed new text is marked in red.**
- 2. Existing text to be deleted is struck through.**

	Page
Introduction	3
Part C Regulations	6
Guidance - Performance and introduction to provisions	8
Section 1 General	10
Definitions	10
Buildings of historic or architectural merit	11
Section 2 Site preparation	12
Site investigation	12
Unsuitable material	13
Section 3 Resistance to contaminants	14
Introduction	14
Naturally occurring contaminants - Radon	14
Man-made contaminants	18
Section 4 Subsoil drainage	20
Subsoil drainage	20
Section 5 Floors	21
General	21
Resistance to moisture from the ground	21
Section 6 Walls	27
General	27
Resistance to moisture from the ground	27
Resistance to moisture from the outside	29

Section 7	Roofs	37
	General	37
	Resistance to moisture from the outside	37
Section 8	Condensation	39
	Interstitial condensation	39
Appendix	Publications referred to	40

Consultation
Version
only

Technical Booklets

This Technical Booklet, which takes effect on 31st October 2012, is one of a series that has been prepared by the Department of Finance and Personnel (the Department) for the purpose of providing practical guidance with respect to the technical requirements of the Building Regulations (Northern Ireland) 2012 (as amended) (the Building Regulations).

At the back of each Technical Booklet is a list of all the Technical Booklets that have been prepared and published by the Department for this purpose.

The guidance given in a Technical Booklet includes performance standards and design provisions relating to compliance with specific aspects of the Building Regulations for the more common building situations.

If the guidance in a Technical Booklet is followed there will be a presumption of compliance with the requirements of those Building Regulations covered by that guidance. However, this presumption can be overturned, so simply following the guidance does not guarantee compliance. For example, if a particular circumstance is not one of the more common building situations the design provisions given in the Technical Booklet may not be appropriate.

There are likely to be alternative ways of demonstrating compliance with the relevant requirements of the Building Regulations other than by following a design provision given in a Technical Booklet. There is therefore no obligation to adopt any particular provision set out in a Technical Booklet, should you decide to comply in some other way. However, you will have to demonstrate that your alternative solution meets the relevant requirements of the Building Regulations by those other means.

This Technical Booklet Requirements

The guidance contained in this Technical Booklet relates only to the requirements of regulations 26, 27, 28 and 29. The work will also have to comply with all other relevant requirements of the Building Regulations.

Materials and workmanship

Any building work which is subject to requirements imposed by Part A of the Building Regulations should be carried out in accordance with regulation 23 of those regulations. Guidance on meeting these requirements for materials and workmanship is given in Technical Booklet B which supports Part B.

The Building Regulations are made for specific purposes, primarily securing the health, safety, welfare and convenience of people and for the conservation of fuel and power. Standards and technical approvals are relevant guidance to the extent that they relate to these purposes. However, they may also address other aspects of performance such as serviceability, or aspects which although they relate to health and safety are not covered by the Building Regulations.

Named standards

Where this Technical Booklet makes reference to a named standard, the relevant version of the standard is the one listed in the Appendix. However, if this version has been replaced or updated by the issuing standards body, the new version may be used as a source of guidance provided that it continues to address the relevant requirements of the Building Regulations.

Diagrams

The diagrams in this Technical Booklet supplement the text. They do not show all the details of construction and are not intended to illustrate compliance with any other requirement of the Building Regulations. They are not necessarily to scale and should not be used as working details.

Protected buildings

District councils have a duty to take account of the desirability to preserve the character of protected buildings when carrying out their functions under Building Regulations. Therefore, where work is to be carried out to a protected building to comply with Part C or any other Part of the Building Regulations, special consideration may be given to the extent of such work for compliance where it would unacceptably alter the character or appearance of the building. Protected buildings are defined in Article 3A(2) of the Building Regulations (Northern Ireland) Order 1979 (as amended).

Other legislation

The provisions of this Technical Booklet relate to the requirements of Building Regulations and do not include measures which may be necessary to meet the requirements of other legislation. Such other legislation may operate during the design or construction stages or when a building is brought into use and can extend to cover aspects which are outside the scope of the Building Regulations.

The Workplace (Health, Safety and Welfare) Regulations (Northern Ireland) 1993

The Workplace (Health, Safety and Welfare) Regulations (Northern Ireland) 1993 (the Workplace Regulations) contain some requirements which affect building design. The main requirements are now covered by the Building Regulations, but for further information see – The Workplace Regulations and the Workplace Health, Safety and Welfare Approved Code of Practice.

The Workplace Regulations apply to the common parts of flats and similar buildings if people such as cleaners, wardens and caretakers are employed to work in these common parts. Where the requirements of the Building Regulations that are covered by Part C do not apply to dwellings, the provisions may still be required in the situations described above in order to satisfy the Workplace Regulations.

Waste and Contaminated Land (Northern Ireland) Order 1997

This Order sets out the regime for identifying and remediating contaminated land and within the context of 'proposed development' this regime is normally applied when contaminated land is identified at the planning stage. The planning authority in Northern Ireland operates in conjunction with DOE Northern Ireland Environment Agency (Contaminated Land Section) to apply a condition on the planning decision requiring a remediation strategy to be submitted by a suitably qualified person and for the strategy to be implemented and verified before development is permitted to commence.

Planning (Northern Ireland) Order 1991

Development in areas of flood risk is regulated by the Northern Ireland Planning Service under the Planning (Northern Ireland) Order 1991. The planning policy in relation to flood risk is set out in Planning Policy Statement 15 "Planning and Flood Risk" (PPS 15). The main objectives of the policy include adopting a precautionary approach when determining planning applications and ensuring that new development is not exposed to the direct threat of flooding.

Flood risk

The susceptibility of land to flooding is a material consideration which is taken into account by the Northern Ireland Planning Service in determining planning applications. There is a presumption in planning guidance that development should not take place in areas that are susceptible to flooding (see DOE NI PPS 15 Planning and Flood Risk).

The Building Regulations do not set any requirements for resistance to flooding. However, where planning permission is granted for a building in an area considered to be at risk of flooding, or where a building in a flood risk area is being renovated it can be constructed with mitigating measures. For example –

- (a) elevated ground water levels or flow of subsoil water across the site can be alleviated by the provision of adequate subsoil drainage (see Section 4);
- (b) sewer flooding due to backflow or surcharging of sewers or drains can be addressed through the use of non-return valves and anti-flooding devices (see paragraphs 4.6 and 4.7);
- (c) resistance to moisture from the ground can be addressed through the use of water resistant construction (see Sections 5 and 6).

Further information on flood resilient and resistant construction can be found in the following publications –

CLG publication *Improving the flood performance of new buildings: flood resilient construction*;

CLG publication *Preparing for floods: interim guidance for improving the flood resistance of domestic and small business properties*; and

Scottish Office publication *Design guidance on flood damage to dwellings*.

See also the Construction Industry Research and Information Association (CIRIA) website which has links to current information.

Part C Regulations

Part C (comprising regulations 25 – 29) of the Building Regulations which sets out the requirements for site preparation and resistance to contaminants and moisture, has been replicated below for the convenience of the user of this Technical Booklet and is taken directly from the Building Regulations (Northern Ireland) 2012 (as amended) in operation at the date of publication of this Technical Booklet.

Any person who intends to demonstrate compliance with the Building Regulations by following the guidance given in this Technical Booklet is advised to ensure that the regulations below are current on the date when plans are deposited or notices given to the district council.

As Part A (comprising regulations 1 – 21) of the Building Regulations sets out the interpretation along with the procedural requirements relating to the application of the regulations, the Department advises that all Parts of the Building Regulations be read in conjunction with Part A of those regulations.

The Building Regulations (Northern Ireland) 2012 and any subsequent amendment may be viewed by following the links from the Departments website at “www.finance-ni.gov.uk/articles/building-regulations-northern-ireland”-buildingregulationsni.gov.uk”.

PART C

Site preparation and resistance to contaminants and moisture

Application and interpretation

25. —(1) Regulation 28 in respect of resistance to ground moisture of floors and walls, and weather resistance of walls, shall not apply where the building is intended to be used wholly for—

- (a) storing goods, provided that any person who is habitually employed in the building is engaged only in storing, caring for or removing the goods; or
- (b) a purpose such that compliance with regulation 28 would not serve to increase protection to the health or safety of any person habitually employed in the building.

(2) Regulation 29 applies only to a dwelling.

(3) In this Part—

“Contaminant” includes any substance which is or could become corrosive, explosive, inflammable, radioactive or toxic and includes deposits of faecal or animal matter;

“Floor” includes any base or structure between the surface of the ground, or the surface of any hardcore laid upon the ground, and the upper surface of the floor;

“Moisture” includes water in liquid, solid, semi-solid or gaseous form but not flood water;

“Radon affected area” means any area designated as such by the Health Protection Agency in the publication ‘Radon in Dwellings in Northern Ireland: 2009 Review and Atlas’; and

“Radon affected area” means any area designated as such by Public Health England in the publication ‘Radon in Northern Ireland: Indicative Atlas’; and

“Wall” means any opaque part of the external envelope of a building that is at an angle of 70° or more to the horizontal and includes piers, chimneys, columns and parapets which form part of the wall.

Site preparation and resistance to contaminants

26.—(1) The site of a building and the ground adjacent to it shall be prepared and treated, and measures shall be taken, so as to prevent, as far as reasonably practicable, any harmful effect on the building or the health or safety of the occupants caused by—

- (a) vegetable soil; and
- (b) contaminants.

(2) Without prejudice to the generality of paragraph (1) measures shall be taken to prevent or limit the ingress of radon from the ground into any dwelling situated in a radon affected area.

Subsoil drainage

27. The site of a building and the ground adjacent to it shall be drained as far as reasonably practicable, or the building otherwise protected so as to prevent any harmful effect on the building or the health of the occupants caused by—

- (a) ground water; and
- (b) existing subsoil drainage.

Resistance to moisture and weather

28. Every wall, floor and roof shall be constructed so as to prevent any harmful effect on the building or the health of the occupants caused by the passage of moisture to any part of the building from—

- (a) the ground; and
- (b) the weather.

Condensation

29. A building to which this regulation applies shall be designed and constructed so as to prevent, as far as reasonably practicable, any harmful effect on the building from moisture in the form of interstitial condensation.

Relevant definitions in regulation 2 in Part A of the Building Regulations.

“Drain”

“Dwelling”

“Site”

Site preparation and resistance to contaminants

Performance

- 0.1 It is the view of the Department that the requirements of regulation 26(1) will be met by making reasonable provisions to prevent harmful effects on the building and to secure the health and safety of persons in and about the building against adverse effects of –
- (a) unsuitable material including vegetable soil; and
 - (b) contaminants on the site and the ground adjacent to the building.
- 0.2 It is the view of the Department that the requirements of regulation 26(2) will be met if dwellings in radon affected areas adequately limit the ingress of radon from the ground.

Introduction to provisions in Sections 2 and 3

- 0.3 The guidance in Section 2 is to ensure that the site is prepared and treated to prevent harmful effect on the building and on the health and safety of the occupants by requiring an appropriate site investigation to be carried out and the findings used to determine the extent of site preparation work needed.
- Vegetable matter and other unsuitable materials should be removed from the ground to be covered by the building.
- 0.4 The guidance in Section 3 is to ensure that where a dwelling is located in the radon risk category of 1-3% or any category above this risk on the radon map in *'Radon in Dwellings in Northern Ireland: 2009 Review and Atlas'* *'Radon in Northern Ireland: Indicative Atlas'* then radon protection will be required.

Where man-made contaminants have not been identified in the normal way at planning stage, but are discovered during the building process, then in this exceptional circumstance the district council will require the site to be remediated.

Subsoil drainage

Performance

- 0.5 It is the view of the Department that the requirements of regulation 27 will be met if the site of the building and the ground adjacent to it is drained by subsoil drainage as far as reasonably practicable, or the building is otherwise protected to prevent any harmful effect on the building or the health and safety of the occupants caused by the occurrence of ground water or any pre-existing subsoil drainage.

Introduction to provisions in Section 4 of this Technical Booklet

- 0.6 The guidance in Section 4 is to prevent harmful effect on the building and the health of occupants by any existing active subsoil drainage which is disturbed by the development and then requiring the subsoil drainage to be relaid, rerouted or redirected.

Where there is a risk of ground water occurring beneath the building or around the building due to a rise in the water table or otherwise then subsoil drainage (or other effective means of safeguarding) should be provided.

Where water borne contaminants become evident as a result of excavations and are transported to the foundations or into the building or its services then remedial subsoil drainage should be provided.

Resistance to moisture and weather

Performance

- 0.7 It is the view of the Department that the requirements of regulation 28 will be met if the floors, walls and roofs are constructed to protect the building and secure the health and safety of persons in the building from harmful effects caused by the passage of moisture from the ground and the weather.

Introduction to provisions in Sections 5, 6 and 7

- 0.8 Section 5 contains guidance on the construction of floor types which will resist the passage of moisture from the ground.
- Section 6 contains guidance on the construction of wall types which will resist the passage of moisture from the ground and also from the weather.
- Section 7 contains guidance on the construction of roof types which will resist the passage of moisture from the weather.

Condensation

Performance

- 0.9 It is the view of the Department that the requirements of regulation 29 will be met if the floors, walls and roofs of a dwelling are designed and constructed to protect the dwelling from harmful effects caused by interstitial condensation.

Introduction to provisions in Section 8

- 0.10 The guidance in Section 8 is to ensure that interstitial condensation in a dwelling is avoided by following the design and construction guidance given in the specified BS and BRE technical documents.

Definitions

1.1 In this Technical Booklet the following definitions apply –

Contaminant – is defined in regulation 25 in Part C of the Building Regulations.

Drain – is defined in regulation 2 in Part A of the Building Regulations.

Dwelling – is defined in regulation 2 in Part A of the Building Regulations.

Floor – is defined in regulation 25 in Part C of the Building Regulations.

Ground water – water in liquid form, either as a static water table or flowing through the ground.

Interstitial condensation – conversion of water vapour to liquid water which occurs within or between the layers of a construction.

Moisture – is defined in regulation 25 in Part C of the Building Regulations.

Precipitation – moisture in liquid, solid or semi-solid form falling from the atmosphere, usually as rain, sleet, snow or hail. In this Technical Booklet, the term ‘precipitation’ includes spray blown from the sea or any other body of water adjacent to the building.

Radon affected area – is defined in regulation 25 in Part C of the Building Regulations.

Roof – any part of the external envelope of a building that is at an angle of less than 70° to the horizontal.

Site – in relation to a building, means the area of ground covered or to be covered by the building, including its foundations and the ground adjacent to it.

Spray – water droplets driven by the wind from the surface of the sea or other bodies of water adjacent to buildings. (Sea spray can be especially hazardous to materials because of its salt content).

Vapour control layer – a layer intended to limit the transport of water vapour through the building fabric by diffusion or by air movement.

Wall – is defined in regulation 25 in Part C of the Building Regulations.

Buildings of historic or architectural merit

- 1.2 Special considerations may apply where the building to which the work is to be carried out has historic or architectural merit and compliance with Part C of the Building Regulations would unacceptably alter the character or appearance of the building.
- 1.3 When undertaking work to or in connection with a building of historic or architectural merit, the aim should be to follow the guidance in this Technical Booklet to the extent that it is practicable. Particular issues in relation to work to buildings that warrant sympathetic treatment and where specialist advice from conservation experts would be beneficial include –
- (a) restoring the historic character of a building that has been subject to inappropriate alteration (e.g. replacement windows, doors and rooflights);
 - (b) rebuilding a building (e.g. following a fire or filling in a gap site in an historic terrace); and
 - (c) making provisions for the fabric of historic buildings to “breathe” to control moisture and long term decay problems.

Consultation
Version
only

Site investigation

- 2.1 The nature and extent of site preparation will depend on the findings of the site investigation. The site investigation (relevant to Sections 2, 3 and 4 of this Technical Booklet) should consist of a number of well defined stages –
- (a) **Planning the investigation.** Clear objectives should be set for the investigation, including the scope and requirements, which enable the investigation to be planned and carried out efficiently and provide the required information;
 - (b) **Desk study.** A review of the historical, geological and environmental information about the site is essential;
 - (c) **Site reconnaissance or walk over survey.** This stage of the investigation facilitates the identification of actual and potential physical hazards and the design of the main investigation; and
 - (d) **Main investigation and reporting.** This will usually include intrusive and non-intrusive sampling and testing to provide soil parameters for design and construction. The main investigation should be preceded by (b) and (c) above.
- 2.2 The extent and level of investigation needs to be tailored to the type of development and the previous use of land. Typically the site investigation should include susceptibility to ground water levels and flow, underlying geology, and ground and hydro-geological properties. A geotechnical site investigation should identify physical hazards for site development, determine an appropriate design, and provide soil parameters for design and construction. BS 5930 provides comprehensive guidance on site investigations. Guidance on site investigation for low-rise building is also available in the following BRE Digests –
- Digest 318 *Site investigation for low-rise building: desk studies;*
 - Digest 322 *Site investigation for low-rise building: procurement;*
 - Digest 348 *Site investigation for low-rise building: the walk-over survey;*
 - Digest 381 *Site investigation for low-rise building: trial pits;*
 - Digest 383 *Site investigation for low-rise building: soil description;*
 - and
 - Digest 411 *Site investigation for low-rise building: direct investigations.*
- Reference should also be made to BS 8103-1 *Structural design of low rise buildings.*
- 2.3 Where the site is potentially affected by contaminants, a combined geotechnical and geoenvironmental investigation should be considered. Guidance on sites affected by contaminants is given in Section 3.
- 2.4 Where a site investigation report has been produced, a copy of the report should be given to the district council to facilitate the assessment of the submission.

Unsuitable material

- 2.5 Vegetable matter such as turf and roots should be removed from the ground to be covered by the building at least to a depth to prevent later growth. The harmful effect that vegetation roots may have on the building should be assessed.
- 2.6 On sites previously used for buildings, consideration should be given to the presence of existing foundations, services, buried tanks and any other infrastructure that could endanger persons in and about the building and any land associated with the building.
- 2.7 Where the site contains fill or made ground, consideration should be given to its compressibility and its potential for collapse on wetting, and to appropriate remedial measures to prevent damaging differential settlement. Guidance is given in BRE Digest 427 *Low-rise buildings on fill* and BRE Report BR 424 *Building fill: Geotechnical aspects*.

Consultation
Version
only

Introduction

- 3.1 A wide range of solid, liquid and gaseous man-made contaminants can arise on sites, especially those that have had a previous industrial or commercial use. Other sites, with a generally rural use such as agriculture or forestry may be contaminated by pesticides, fertiliser, fuels, oils and decaying matter of biological origin.
- 3.2 Contamination of a site will normally be identified as part of the planning process. Where contamination of a site is identified, planning permission will only be granted subject to the condition that the contamination is remediated such that the site is restored to a state suitable for the proposed development.
- 3.3 The application of regulation 26(1) is based on the presumption that the area of the land within the boundary of the site will be free from contaminants. It may be that the site was not contaminated or any identified contamination was remediated prior to commencement of construction of the building.
- 3.4 The only active use of the district council's power to deal with contaminants is in relation to the risk of radon ingress in dwellings where dwellings in a designated radon affected area are required to have measures incorporated to resist the ingress of radon.
- Where, in exceptional circumstances, contamination of a site is only discovered during the building process, regulation 26(1)(b) empowers the district council to require the site to be remediated to a state suitable for the proposed development.
- 3.5 Useful information/guidance on man-made contaminants is given in paragraphs 3.13 – 3.16 in relation to whether or not a site may be contaminated due to its former usage.

Naturally occurring contaminants - Radon

General

- 3.6 Radon is a naturally occurring radioactive colourless and odourless gas which is formed in small quantities by radioactive decay wherever uranium and radium are found. It can move through the subsoil and so into buildings. Some parts of Northern Ireland have higher levels than elsewhere. Exposure to high levels of radon for long periods increases the risk of developing lung cancer.

It is not possible to predict the radon concentration in a dwelling to be built on a particular site prior to construction.

Radon affected areas

- 3.7 ~~Maps showing the probability of radon concentrations in dwellings in Northern Ireland are available in the Health Protection Agency report *Radon in Dwellings in Northern Ireland: 2009 Review and Atlas*.~~

~~This document is available as a free download from the Northern Ireland Environment Agency's (NIEA) website <http://www.ni-environment.gov.uk>.~~

Maps showing the probability of radon concentrations in dwellings in Northern Ireland are available in the Public Health England report *Radon in Northern Ireland: Indicative Atlas*.

This document is available as a free download from the UKradon website <http://www.ukradon.org/information/ukmaps>. The UKradon website also provides free interactive UK maps of radon (1Km grid indicative atlas).

- 3.8 The areas on the maps with a greater than 1% probability of the radon level in a dwelling exceeding the current UK Action Level are designated radon affected areas. The Action Level is the maximum annual average radon concentration in dwellings that is set by the ~~Health Protection Agency~~ **Public Health England**. Radon concentration is measured in becquerels per cubic metre (Bq/m³) and the Action Level is currently set at 200 Bq/m³.
- 3.9 The areas where radon protection is required may be reviewed by the Department in the light of further advice from the ~~NIEA~~ **Public Health England**, working with the **Geological Survey of Northern Ireland** and the **British Geological Survey**.

Radon protection in dwellings

- 3.10 In radon affected areas –
- new dwellings;
 - alterations, extensions, conservatory and porch extensions (including exempt conservatory and porch extensions) to dwellings; and
 - buildings converted to dwellings through a material change of use,

should be protected from the ingress of radon in accordance with paragraphs 3.11 and 3.12.

- 3.11 ~~Guidance on protective measures is given in the following publications produced by BRE –~~
- ~~BR 413 *Radon: guidance on protective measures for new dwellings in Northern Ireland*.~~

~~Note: the following matters in BR 413 no longer apply –~~

- ~~the radon survey (on which the maps are based) referred to on page 3 has been superseded – for the new survey see paragraph 3.7 of this Technical Booklet;~~
- ~~the radon maps at the back of the publication – for the new maps see paragraph 3.7 of this Technical Booklet;~~
- ~~the light and dark grey shading on the maps – the new maps show 5 levels of radon risk in shades of yellow to brown; three shades cover the risk level from 1% to 10%, and two shades cover over 10%; and~~

- (iv) 5 km grid squares—the new maps show 1 km grid squares.
- (b) ~~GBG 73 Radon protection for new domestic extensions and conservatories with solid concrete ground floors; and~~
- (c) ~~BR 267 Major alterations and conversions: a BRE guide to radon remedial measures in existing dwellings.~~

~~GBG 73 and BR 267 are written for England & Wales. The references to radon maps and the Building Regulations do not apply in Northern Ireland; however, the guidance in these documents is equally relevant to Northern Ireland.~~

3.11 Guidance on protective measures is given in the BRE produced publication, BR 211 Radon: guidance on protective measures for new buildings.

Note –

- (i) This updated 2015 edition of guidance incorporates the indicative atlas maps (including Northern Ireland) for assessing the need and level of protection measures. Section 4 of the 2015 edition also considers the use of site-specific radon risk reports (where available);
- (ii) The 2015 edition includes supplementary advice for extensions, conversions and refurbishment projects.

3.12 The level of protection required in Northern Ireland is given in Table 3.1.

Table 3.1— Radon protection required	
Radon risk shown on the radon map referred to in para 3.7 (probability of radon in a dwelling exceeding the Action Level)	Radon protection required
0–1%	No protection required
1–3% 3–5% and 5–10%	Zone 1 measures (radon membrane required)
10–30% and greater than 30%	Zone 2 measures (membrane plus provision for subfloor depressurisation e.g. a sump and stub duct)

Table 3.1 (new) Radon Protection Required

Radon risk shown on the radon map referred to in para 3.7 (probability of radon in a dwelling exceeding the Action Level)	Radon protection¹ required
0 – 1%	No protection required
1 – 3% 3 – 5% and 5 – 10%	Zone 1 measures (radon membrane required)
10 – 30% and greater than 30%	Zone 2 measures (membrane plus provision of subfloor depressurisation e.g. a sump and stub duct)
<p>Note:</p> <p>(1) BR 211 Radon:publication (referred to in para 3.11) provides guidance on determining the level of protection that is appropriate, along with details of protective measures for new buildings, and extensions etc.</p>	

Consultation
Version
only

Man-made contaminants

- 3.13 Man-made contamination, or the potential for it, is a material planning consideration which is taken into account by the Northern Ireland Planning Service in determining planning applications. Where planning permission is granted for a development it may be granted subject to conditions or with informatives designed to minimise risk associated with the suspected contaminants to future users or occupiers of the site. The responsibility for assessing whether or not land is contaminated rests with the developer and expert advice should be sought where necessary. Examples of sites likely to contain contaminants are given in Table 3.2.

Table 3.2 Examples of sites likely to contain contaminants

Animal and animal products processing works
Asbestos works
Ceramics, cement and asphalt manufacturing works
Chemical works
Dockyards and dockland
Engineering works (including aircraft manufacturing, railway engineering works, shipyards, electrical and electronic equipment manufacturing works)
Gas works, coal carbonisation plants and ancillary by-product works
Industries making or using wood preservatives
Landfill and other waste disposal sites
Metal mines, smelters, foundries, steel works and metal finishing works
Munitions production and testing sites
Oil storage and distribution sites
Paper and printing works
Power stations
Railway land, especially larger sidings and depots
Road vehicle fuelling, service and repair, garages and filling stations
Scrap yards
Sewage works, sewage farms and sludge disposal sites
Tanneries
Textile works and dye works
Note: The above list is not exhaustive.

- 3.14 There may be some occasions when a site containing contaminants has not been identified at planning stage, and the presence of contaminants is suspected later. Some signs indicating the possible presence of contaminants are given in Table 3.3.

Table 3.3 Examples of possible contaminants	
Signs of possible contaminants	Possible contaminant
Vegetation (absence, poor or unnatural growth)	Metals
	Metal compounds
	Organic compounds Gases (landfill or natural source)
Surface materials (unusual colours and contours may indicate wastes and residues)	Metal
	Metal compounds
	Oily and tarry wastes
	Asbestos
	Other mineral fibres
	Organic compounds including phenols
	Combustible material including coal and coke dust
	Refuse and waste
Fumes and odours (may indicate organic chemicals)	Volatile organic and/or sulfurous compounds from landfill or petrol/solvent spillage
	Corrosive liquids
	Faecal animal and vegetable matter (biologically active)
Damage to exposed foundations of existing buildings	Sulfates
Drums and containers (empty or full)	Various
Note: The above list is not exhaustive.	

- 3.15 If signs of possible contaminants are identified the district council and the Northern Ireland Environment Agency should be informed at once. If the presence of contaminants is confirmed some form of remediation may be required and where necessary expert advice should be sought to provide a remedial solution.
- 3.16 Where contamination of a site is discovered during the building process, regulation 26(1)(b) empowers the district council to require the site to be remediated to a state suitable for the proposed development.

Subsoil drainage

- 4.1 The provisions that follow assume that the site of the building and the ground adjacent to it is not subject to flooding.
- 4.2 Where the water table can rise to within 250 mm of the lowest damp proof membrane (DPM) of the building, or where surface water could enter or adversely affect the building, either the ground to be covered by the building should be drained by gravity, or some other effective means should be taken to safeguard the building.
- 4.3 If the route of an existing active subsoil drain would pass under the building it should be –
- (a) relaid in pipes with sealed joints and have access points before and after it passes under the building;
 - (b) rerouted around the building; or
 - (c) redirected to another outfall.
- 4.4 Where there is a risk that ground water beneath or around the building could adversely affect the stability and properties of the ground, either the ground to be covered by the building should be drained by gravity, or some other effective means should be taken to safeguard the building (see Section 5 – Floors).
- 4.5 General excavation work for foundations and services can alter the passage of ground water which flows through the site. Where water borne contaminants are present in the ground, either the ground to be covered by the building should be drained, or some other effective means should be taken to prevent the transportation of such water borne contaminants to the foundations or into the building or its services.
- 4.6 For protecting low lying buildings or basements from localised backflow where foul water drainage also receives rainwater, information is provided in CLG Approved Document H *Drainage and waste disposal*. In heavy rainfall these systems surcharge and where preventative measures are not taken this could lead to increased risks of water damage within the property.
- 4.7 Blockages in drains and sewers may lead to backflow of sewage into buildings. Information on preventing backflow is given in CIRIA publication C506 *Low-cost options for prevention of flooding from sewers*.

General

- 5.1 This section gives guidance on the resistance to the passage of moisture from the ground in relation to the following floor types –
- (a) ground supported floors (see paragraphs 5.3 to 5.11);
 - (b) suspended timber ground floors (see paragraphs 5.12 and 5.13); and
 - (c) suspended concrete ground floors (see paragraphs 5.14 to 5.19).
- 5.2 Floors next to the ground should –
- (a) resist the passage of moisture from the ground to the upper surface of the floor;
 - (b) not be damaged by moisture from the ground;
 - (c) not be damaged by ground water;
 - (d) resist the passage of gases from the ground; and
 - (e) in dwellings, be designed and constructed so that their structural and thermal performance are not adversely affected by interstitial condensation (see Section 8).

To comply with Regulation 26 floors in some localities may need to resist the passage of hazardous gases from the ground such as radon or methane. Protective measures which include a gas resistant barrier can, with proper detailing, function also as a damp proof membrane (DPM). For specific guidance on radon protection refer to paragraphs 3.10 to 3.12.

Resistance to moisture from the ground

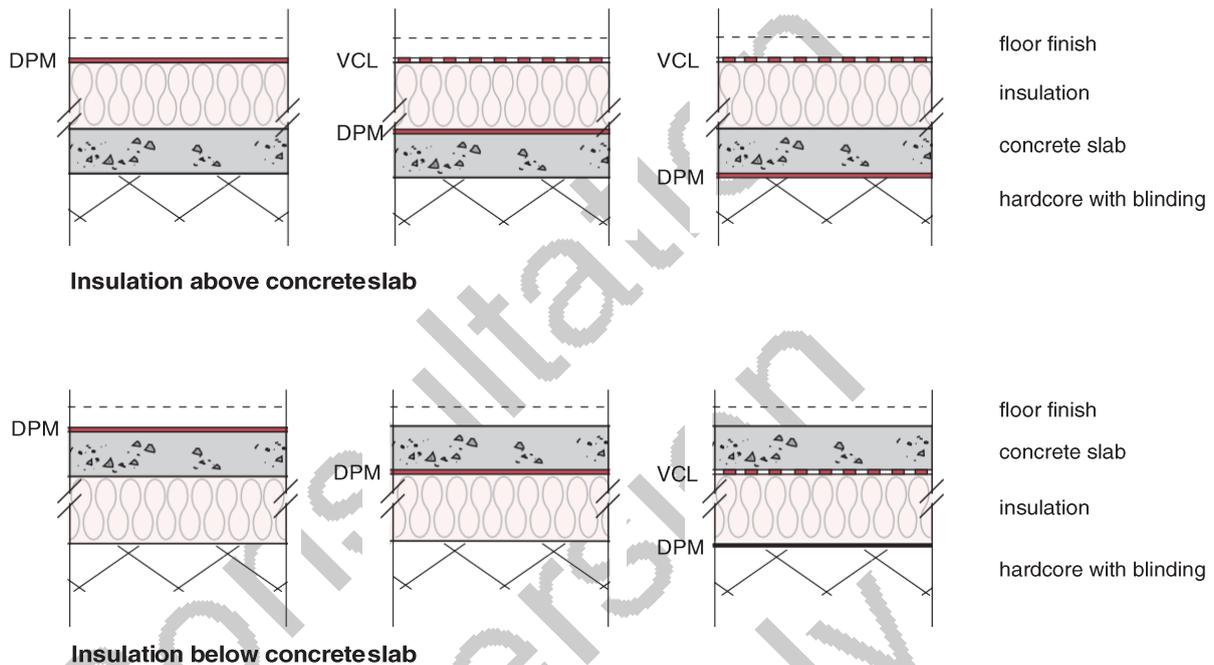
Ground supported floors

- 5.3 Any ground supported floor should meet the requirement to resist the passage of moisture from the ground if the ground is covered with dense concrete laid on a hardcore bed and a damp proof membrane is provided.
- 5.4 Unless it is subjected to water pressure, which is likely in the case of buildings on very permeable strata such as limestone or gravel (in which case see paragraph 5.11), a concrete ground supported floor may be constructed as follows (see Diagram 5.1) –
- (a) well compacted hardcore bed, not greater than 600 mm deep (if the hardcore bed is deeper than 600 mm, there may be a risk of excessive settlement and cracking of the floor slab; in such cases, a suspended floor slab is advised), of clean, broken brick or similar inert material, free from materials including water soluble sulfates in quantities which could damage the concrete (see BRE Digest 276 *Hardcore*);
 - (b) concrete at least 100 mm thick (but thicker if the structural design requires) to mix ST2 in BS 8500-1 or, if there is embedded reinforcement, to mix ST4; and

- (c) DPM above or below the concrete or insulation, and continuous with the damp proof courses in walls, piers and the like. If the ground could contain water soluble sulfates, or there is any risk that sulfate or other deleterious matter could contaminate the hardcore, the membrane should be placed at the base of the concrete slab (see BRE Special Digest SD 1 *Concrete in aggressive ground: assessing the aggressive chemical environment: Part 1*).

Diagram 5.1 Ground supported floor

see para 5.4



The damp proof membrane (DPM) may be above or below the insulation or the concrete slab.

Where the DPM is on the warm side of the insulation it will act as a vapour control layer (VCL) and minimise the risk of interstitial condensation forming on any of the layers on the cold side of the insulation.

- 5.5 A membrane below the concrete should be formed with a sheet of polyethylene, which should be at least 300 µm thick (1200 gauge) with sealed joints and laid on a bed of material that will not damage the sheet.
- 5.6 A membrane laid above the concrete should be either polyethylene sheet as described above (but without the bedding material) or three coats of cold applied bitumen solution or similar moisture and water vapour resisting material. In each case it should be protected either by a screed or a floor finish, unless it is a waterproof membrane that will also serve as a floor finish.
- 5.7 A membrane between the floor finish and the insulation may be polyethylene sheet as described above.

- 5.8 Where the DPM is on the warm side of the insulation it will also act as a vapour control layer (VCL) and prevent interstitial condensation forming on any of the layers on the cold side of the insulation. Where the DPM is placed at a lower level than the insulation and no VCL is provided there is a risk of interstitial condensation which may accumulate year-on-year. However, with insulation of high vapour resistance, a vapour control layer may not be necessary but designers should use condensation software to determine if there is a risk of a year-on-year build up of interstitial condensation (see paragraph 8.2).
- 5.9 Insulants should have sufficient compressive strength to resist the weight of the slab, the anticipated floor loading as well as any possible overloading during construction. In order to resist degradation, it is essential that insulation placed below the DPM has low water absorption. If necessary the insulant should be resistant to contaminants in the ground.
- 5.10 A timber floor finish laid directly on concrete may be bedded in a material which may also serve as a DPM. Timber fillets laid in the concrete as a fixing for a floor finish should be treated with an effective preservative unless they are above the DPM. Some preservative treatments are described in BS 1282.
- 5.11 BS 8102 includes recommendations for floors subject to water pressure.

Suspended timber ground floors

- 5.12 Any suspended timber floor next to the ground should meet the requirement to resist the passage of moisture from the ground if –
- (a) the ground is covered so as to resist moisture and prevent plant growth;
 - (b) there is an adequately ventilated air space between the ground cover and the timber; and
 - (c) there are damp proof courses between the timber and any material which can carry moisture from the ground.
- 5.13 A suspended timber floor next to the ground should be constructed as follows (see Diagram 5.2) –
- (a) ground cover –
 - (i) unreinforced concrete at least 100 mm thick to mix ST 1 in BS 8500-1. The concrete should be laid on a hardcore bed of clean, broken brick or any other inert material free from water soluble sulfates in quantities which could damage the concrete (see Diagram 5.2a); or
 - (ii) concrete, composed as described above, at least 50 mm thick, laid on at least 300 μ m (1200 gauge) polyethylene sheet with sealed joints, and itself laid on a bed of material which will not damage the sheet (see Diagram 5.2b);
 - (b) to prevent water collecting on the ground cover, either the top of the ground cover should be entirely above the highest level of the adjoining ground or, on sloping sites, drainage should be installed on the outside of the upslope side of the building (see Diagram 5.3);

- (c) with a ventilated air space measuring at least 75 mm from the ground cover to the underside of any wall plates and at least 150 mm to the underside of the suspended timber floor (or insulation if provided). Two opposing external walls should have ventilation openings placed so that the ventilating air will have a free path between opposite sides and to all parts. The openings should be not less than either 1500 mm²/m run of external wall or 500 mm²/m² of floor area, whichever gives the greater opening area. Any pipes needed to carry ventilating air should have a diameter of at least 100 mm. Ventilation openings should incorporate suitable grilles which prevent the entry of vermin to the subfloor but do not resist the air flow unduly. If floor levels need to be nearer to the ground to provide level access, subfloor ventilation may be provided through offset (periscope) ventilators; and
- (d) with a damp proof course of impervious sheet material, engineering brick or slates in cement mortar or other material which will prevent the passage of moisture. Guidance on choice of materials is given in BS 5628-3.

Diagram 5.2 Suspended timber ground floor

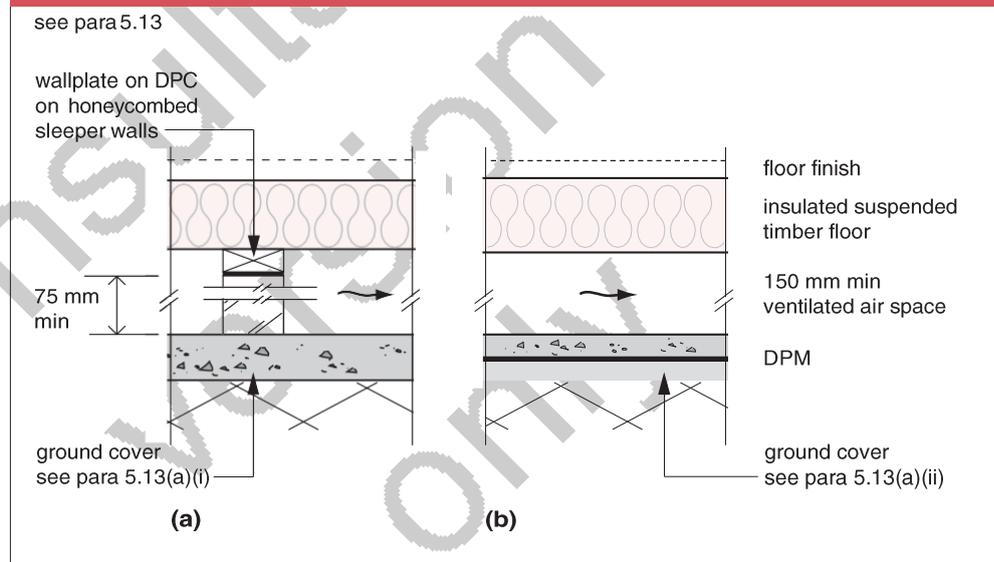
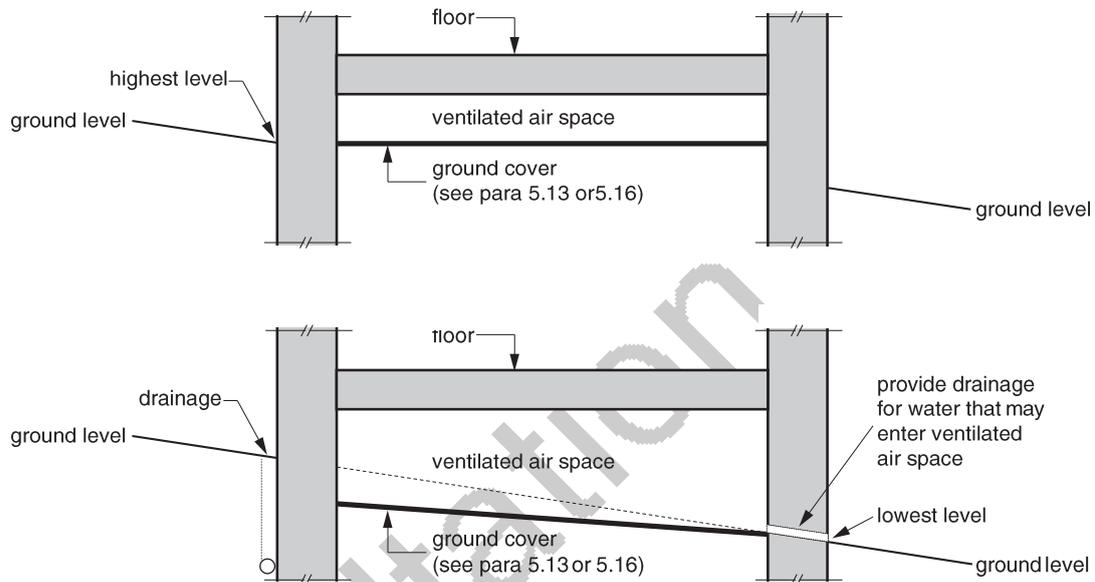


Diagram 5.3 Suspended timber or concrete floors - preventing water collection

see para 5.13(b) and 5.18



Suspended concrete ground floors

- 5.14 Any suspended floor of precast or in situ concrete, including beam and block floors, next to the ground should meet the requirement to resist the passage of moisture from the ground if it will adequately resist the passage of moisture to the upper surface and if the reinforcement is protected against moisture.
- 5.15 A suspended concrete ground floor should be constructed as follows (see Diagram 5.4) –
- in situ concrete at least 100 mm thick (but thicker if the structural design requires) of concrete designation RC28/35 to BS 8500; or
 - precast concrete with or without infilling slabs; and
 - reinforcing steel protected by nominal concrete cover of 40 mm if the concrete is in situ and at least the thickness required for exposure of Class XC3 in BS 8500 if the concrete is precast.
- 5.16 A suspended concrete ground floor should meet the requirement to resist the passage of moisture from the ground if it incorporates (see Diagram 5.4) –
- a damp proof membrane; and
 - where there is a ventilated air space below the floor it should measure at least 150 mm clear from the ground to the underside of the floor (or insulation if provided). The ground below the floor should be free of organic material.
- Two opposing external walls should have ventilation openings placed so that the ventilating air will have a free path between opposite sides and to all parts.

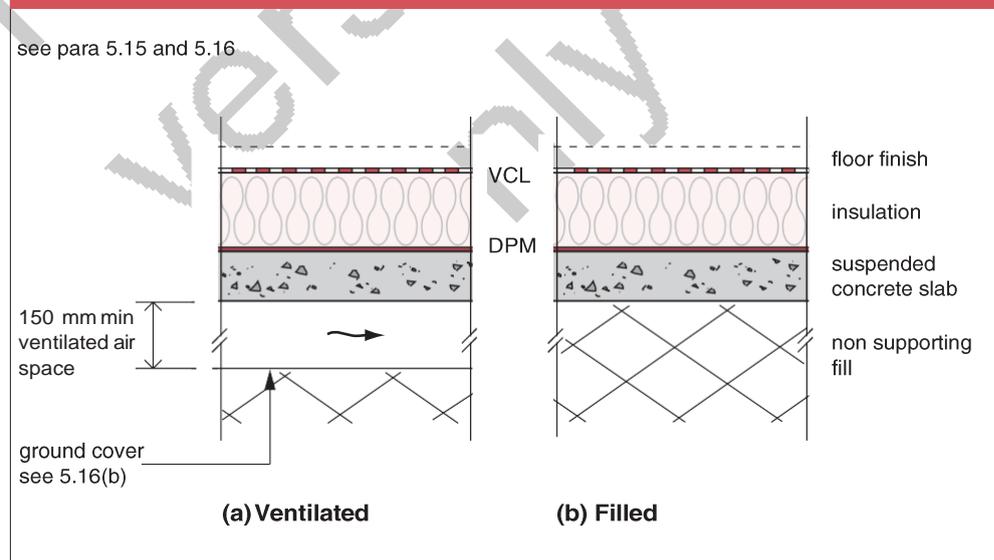
The openings should be not less than either 1500 mm²/m run of external wall or 500 mm²/m² of floor area, whichever gives the greater opening area.

Any pipes needed to carry ventilating air should have a diameter of at least 100 mm. Ventilation openings should incorporate suitable grilles which prevent the entry of vermin to the subfloor but do not resist the air flow unduly.

If floor levels need to be nearer to the ground to provide level access, subfloor ventilation can be provided through offset (periscope) ventilators.

- 5.17 The DPM could be formed with a sheet of polyethylene, which should be at least 300 µm thick (1200 gauge) or three coats of cold applied bitumen solution or similar moisture and water vapour resisting material.
- 5.18 To prevent water collecting on the ground below slab, either the top of the ground below slab should be entirely above the highest level of the adjoining ground or, on sloping sites, drainage should be installed on the outside of the upslope side of the building (see Diagram 5.3).
- 5.19 When the DPM is placed on the cold side of the insulation there is a risk of interstitial condensation which may accumulate year-on-year and a VCL will be required. However, with insulation of high vapour resistance, a VCL may not be necessary but designers should use condensation software to determine if there is a risk of a year-on-year build up of interstitial condensation (see paragraph 8.2).

Diagram 5.4 Suspended concrete ground floor



General

- 6.1 This section gives guidance on the resistance to the passage of moisture from the ground and the resistance to the passage of moisture from the outside caused by the weather in relation to the following walls –
- (a) internal and external walls subject to the passage of moisture from the ground (see paragraphs 6.3 to 6.6);
 - (b) external walls exposed to precipitation covering –
 - (i) deflecting penetrating water to the outside (see paragraph 6.8);
 - (ii) external solid walls (see paragraphs 6.9 to 6.12);
 - (iii) external cavity walls (see paragraphs 6.13 to 6.17);
 - (iv) framed external walls (see paragraph 6.18);
 - (v) cracking in external walls (see paragraph 6.19);
 - (vi) cladding systems for external walls (see paragraphs 6.20 to 6.30); and
 - (vii) joint at doors and windows in external walls and door thresholds (see paragraphs 6.31 to 6.33).

The definition of wall does not include windows, doors and similar openings, but includes the joint between their frames and the wall.

- 6.2 Walls should –
- (a) resist the passage of moisture from the ground to the inside of the building; and
 - (b) not be damaged by moisture from the ground and not carry moisture from the ground to any part of the wall which would be damaged by it, and, if the wall is an external wall –
 - (i) resist the penetration of precipitation to components of the structure that may be damaged by moisture; and
 - (ii) resist the penetration of precipitation to the inside of the building.

Resistance to moisture from the ground

General

- 6.3 Any internal or external wall should meet the requirement to resist the passage of moisture from the ground if a damp proof course is provided.

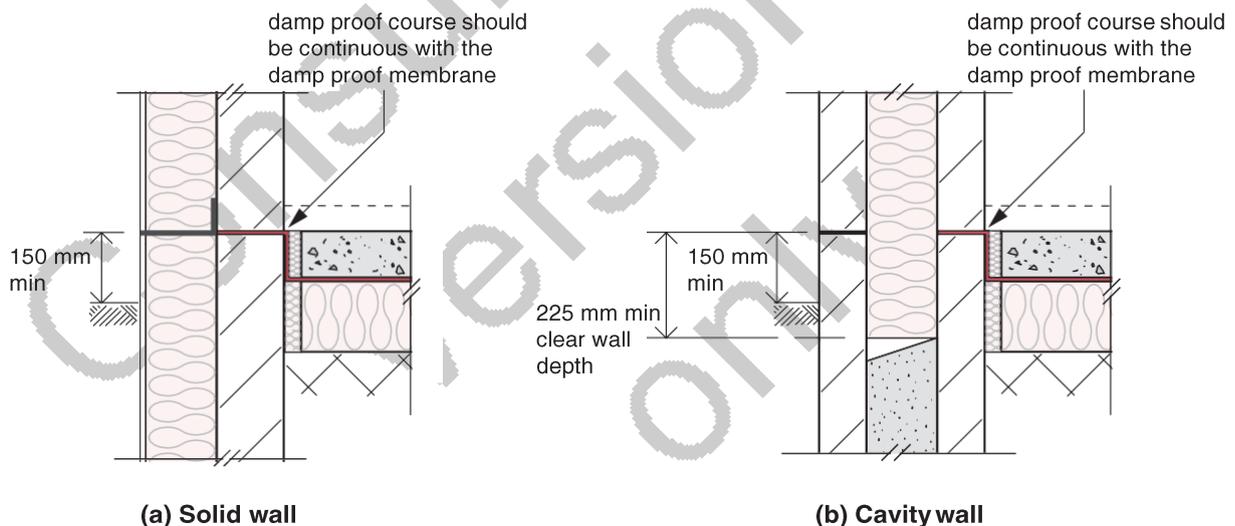
Internal and external walls

- 6.4 An internal or external wall should meet the requirement to resist the passage of moisture from the ground if it is constructed as follows (unless it is subject to ground water pressure, in which case follow the guidance referred to in paragraph 6.6) –

- (a) damp proof course of bituminous material, polyethylene, engineering bricks or slates in cement mortar or any other material that will prevent the passage of moisture. The damp proof course should be continuous with any damp proof membrane in the floor;
- (b) if the wall is an external wall, the damp proof course should be at least 150 mm above the level of the adjoining ground (see Diagram 6.1), unless the design is such that a part of the building will protect the wall; and
- (c) if the wall is an external cavity wall (see Diagram 6.2), the cavity should be taken down at least 225 mm below the level of the lowest damp proof course, or a cavity tray should be provided to deflect penetrating water towards the outer face so as to prevent precipitation passing into the inner leaf. Weep holes should be provided every 900 mm to assist in the transfer of moisture through the external leaf. A cavity tray may be used where a cavity wall is constructed directly off a raft foundation, ground beam or similar supporting structure and it is impractical to continue the cavity down 225 mm.

Diagram 6.1 Damp proof courses

see para 6.4(b)

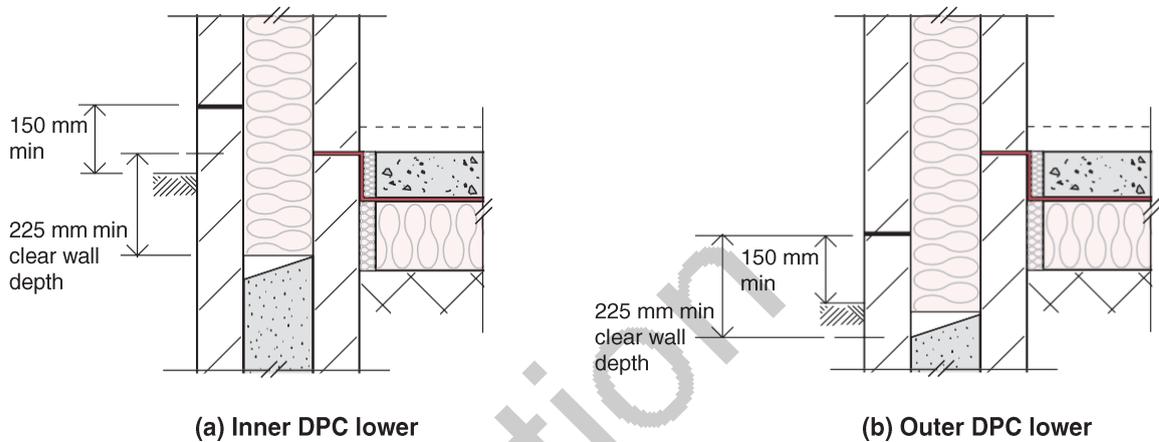


Alternative DPM locations are shown in Diagram 5.1

- 6.5 The requirement to resist the passage of moisture from the ground can also be met by following the relevant recommendations of Clauses 4 and 5 of BS 8215.
- 6.6 BS 8102 includes recommendations for walls subject to ground water pressure including basement walls.

Diagram 6.2 Protecting the inner leaf of a cavity wall

see para 6.4(c)



For clarity weep holes are not shown.
Alternative DPM locations are shown in Diagram 5.1

Resistance to moisture from the outside

General

- 6.7 As well as resisting the passage of moisture from the ground, an external wall should give protection against precipitation. This protection can be given by damp proof courses, trays and flashings (see paragraph 6.8), by a solid wall of sufficient thickness (see paragraphs 6.9 to 6.12), by a cavity wall (see paragraphs 6.13 to 6.17), or by an impervious or weather resisting cladding (see paragraphs 6.20 to 6.30).

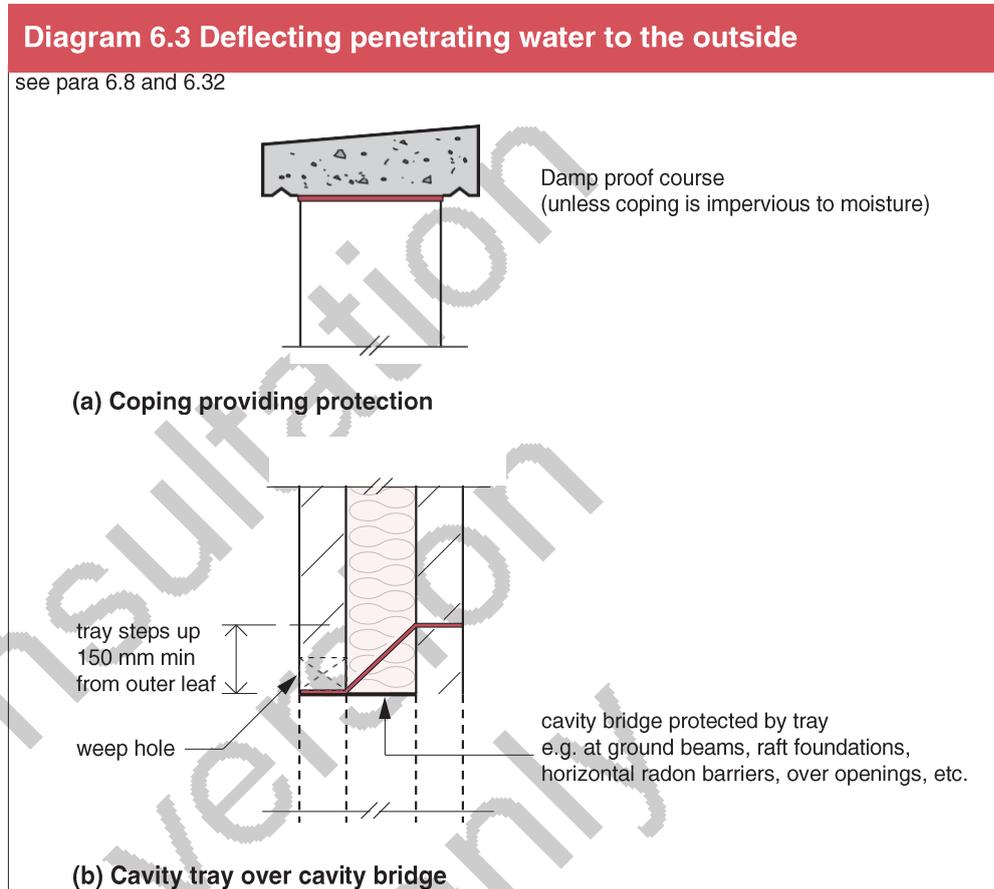
Deflecting penetrating water to the outside of external walls

- 6.8 External solid and cavity walls should be constructed to deflect penetrating water towards the outer face of the wall such as in the following locations –
- below copings at the top of walls (see Diagram 6.3(a)), unless the coping and joints will form a complete barrier to moisture;
 - where the downward flow of water will be interrupted by a cavity bridge, such as at some types of lintel (see Diagram 6.3(b));
 - under openings, unless there is a cill and the cill and its joints will form a complete barrier; and
 - at abutments between walls and roofs.

Damp proof courses, cavity trays and closers should be provided and installed to ensure that water drains outwards.

Where a cavity wall is constructed directly off a raft foundation, ground beam or similar supporting structure a cavity tray should be provided with weep holes every 900 mm to assist in the transfer of moisture through the external leaf (see Diagram 6.3(b)).

Where a cavity tray does not extend the full length of the exposed wall, i.e. above an opening, stop ends and at least two weep holes should be provided.



External solid walls

- 6.9 An external solid wall should meet the requirement if it will hold precipitation until it can be released in a dry period without penetrating to the inside of the building, or causing damage to the building. The wall thickness to achieve this will depend on the type of brick or block and on the severity of the weather including wind driven rain. A method of describing the exposure to wind driven rain is given in BS 8104; see also BS 5628-3 and BRE Report 262 *Thermal insulation: avoiding risks*.

- 6.10 An external solid wall in conditions of “*very severe exposure*” should be protected by external impervious cladding.

An external solid wall in conditions of “*severe exposure*” should be constructed with –

- (a) brickwork or stonework at least 328 mm thick, dense aggregate concrete blockwork at least 250 mm thick, or lightweight aggregate or aerated autoclaved concrete blockwork at least 215 mm thick; or
- (b) brickwork or blockwork which should be rendered or be given protection equivalent to render. The mortar used in the construction of the walls should be in accordance with the guidance given in BS 988-2 and the render should be designed, prepared and applied in accordance with the guidance given in BS EN 13914-1.

Premixed and proprietary renders should be used in accordance with manufacturer’s instructions.

- 6.11 An external solid wall should be insulated on the inside or on the outside. Where the insulation is on the inside, a cavity should be provided to give a break in the path for moisture and, where the insulation is on the outside, it should provide some resistance to the ingress of moisture to ensure the wall remains relatively dry (see Diagram 6.4).
- 6.12 The requirement can also be met by following the relevant recommendations of BS 5628-3. This code describes alternative constructions to suit the severity of the exposure and the type of brick or block.

External cavity walls

- 6.13 An external cavity wall should meet the requirement if the outer leaf is separated from the inner leaf by a drained air space, or in any other way which will prevent precipitation from being carried to the inner leaf.

- 6.14 The construction of external cavity walls could include –

- (a) an outer leaf of masonry (bricks, blocks, stone or manufactured stone);
- (b) a cavity at least 50 mm wide. The cavity is to be bridged only by wall ties, cavity trays provided to prevent moisture being carried to the inner leaf, pipes and ducts, cavity insulation (see paragraphs 6.16 and 6.17), cavity barriers, firestops and cavity closures, where appropriate; and
- (c) an inner leaf of masonry or frame with lining.

Masonry units should be laid on a full bed of mortar with all joints substantially and continuously filled to ensure weather resistance.

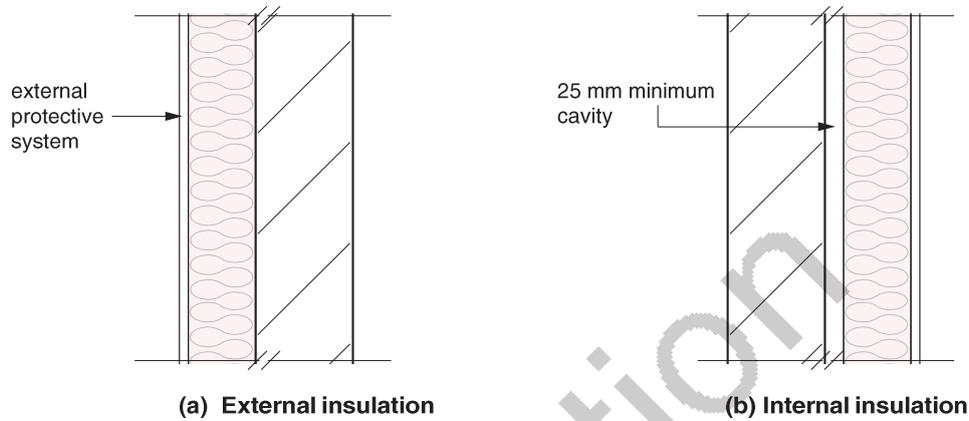
Where a cavity is to be partially filled, the residual cavity should not be less than 50 mm wide (see Diagram 6.4(c)).

- 6.15 The requirement can also be met by following the relevant recommendations of BS 5628-3. The code describes factors affecting rain penetration of cavity walls.

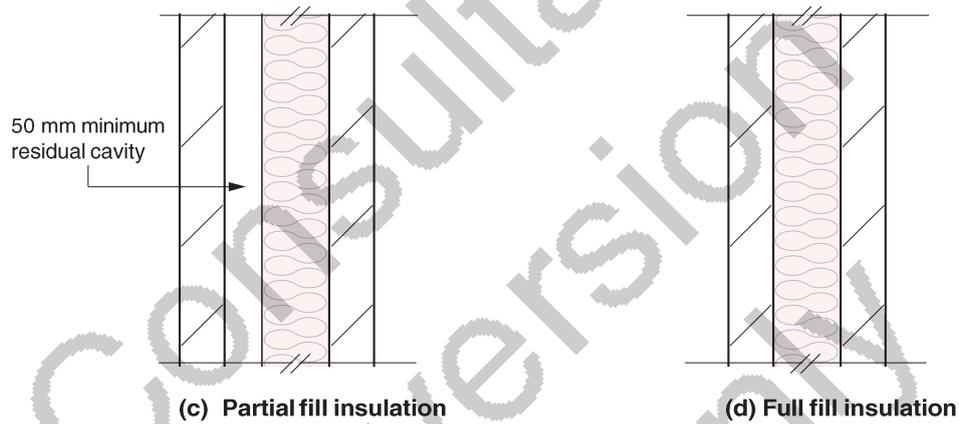
Diagram 6.4 Insulated external walls - examples

see paras 6.11, 6.14 and 6.18

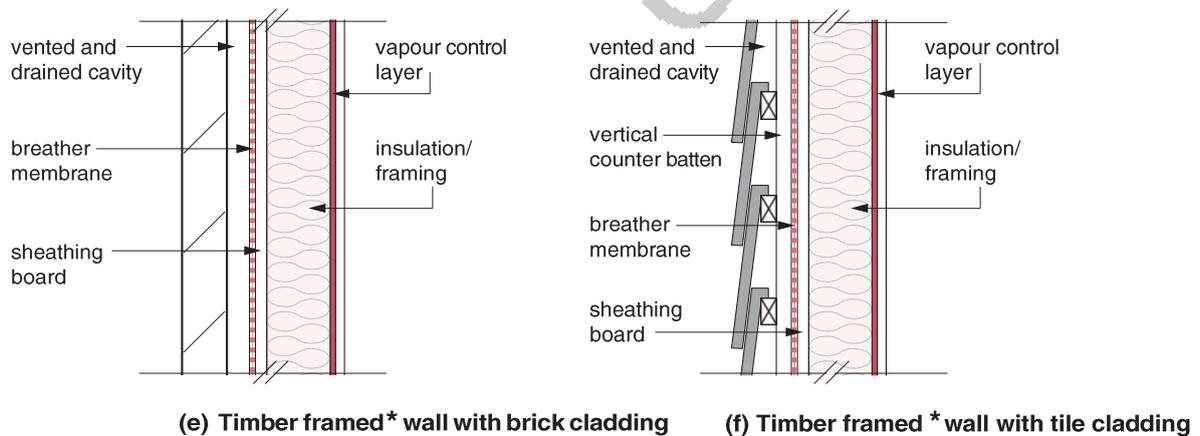
Solid walls



Cavity walls



Framed walls



*Note: In the case of light steel frames, insulation should be fixed to the external face of the steel frame to minimise the risk of condensation.

Full or partial cavity insulation of external walls

- 6.16 A full or partial fill insulating material may be placed in the cavity between the outer leaf and an inner leaf of masonry subject to the following conditions –
- (a) the suitability of a wall for installing insulation into the cavity should be determined either by reference to BRE Report 262 *Thermal insulation: avoiding risks* or following the calculation or assessment procedure in current British or CEN standards. When partial fill materials are to be used, the residual cavity should be not less than 50 mm nominal; or
 - (b) a rigid (board or batt) thermal insulating material incorporated into the wall should be the subject of current certification from an appropriate body or a European Technical Approval and the work should be carried out in accordance with the requirements of that document; or
 - (c) other insulating materials inserted into the cavity after the wall has been constructed should have certification from an appropriate body and be installed in accordance with the appropriate installations code. The suitability of the wall for filling is to be assessed before the work is carried out and the person undertaking the work should be registered under an Approved Installer Scheme that includes an assessment of capability.
Alternatively the insulating material should be the subject of current certification from an appropriate body or a European Technical Approval. The work should be carried out in accordance with the requirements of the certification and the operatives should be either directly employed by the holder of the certification or employed by an installer approved to operate under the certification; and
 - (d) when the cavity wall of an existing building is being filled, special attention should be given to the condition of the external leaf of the wall, e.g. its state of repair and type of pointing. Guidance is given in BS 8208-1. Some materials that are used to fill existing cavity walls may have a low risk of moisture being carried over to the internal leaf of the wall. In cases where a third party assessment of such a cavity fill material contains a method of assessing the construction of the walls and exposure risk, the procedure set out in paragraph 6.17 may be replaced by that method.
- 6.17 BRE Report BR 262 *Thermal insulation: avoiding risks* provides guidance on exposure of cavity walls to driving rain. It contains a map showing exposure zones and a table giving maximum recommended exposure zones for various insulated masonry walls.

Framed external walls

- 6.18 Any framed external wall will meet the requirement if the cladding is separated from the insulation or sheathing by a vented and drained cavity with a membrane that is vapour permeable, but resists the passage of liquid water e.g. a breather membrane, on the inside of the cavity (see Diagram 6.4(f)).

Cracking in external walls

- 6.19 Severe rain penetration may occur through cracks in masonry external walls caused by thermal movement or by subsidence. The possibility of this occurring should be taken into account when designing a building. Detailed guidance is given in –
- (a) BRE *Building elements: walls, windows and doors – performance, diagnosis, maintenance, repair and avoidance of defects*;
 - (b) BRE Report 292 *Cracking in buildings*; and
 - (c) guidance on choice of materials is given in BS 5628-3.

Cladding systems for external walls

- 6.20 Cladding systems for walls should –
- (a) resist the penetration of precipitation to the inside of the building; and
 - (b) not be damaged by precipitation and not carry precipitation to any part of the building which would be damaged by it.
- 6.21 Cladding can be designed to protect a building from precipitation (often driven by the wind) either by holding it at the face of the building or by stopping it from penetrating beyond the back of the cladding.
- 6.22 Any cladding will meet the requirement to resist the weather if –
- (a) it is jointless or has sealed joints, and is impervious to moisture so that moisture will not enter the cladding (such as metal, plastic, glass and bituminous products); or
 - (b) it has overlapping dry joints, is impervious or weather resisting (including natural stone or slate, cement based products, fired clay and wood), and is backed by a material which will direct precipitation which enters the cladding towards the outer face.
- 6.23 Some materials can deteriorate rapidly without special care and they should only be used as the weather resisting part of a cladding system if certain conditions are met (see Part B Materials and workmanship of the Building Regulations). In determining whether a material is of a suitable nature and quality for use as the weather-resisting part of an external wall no account should be taken of any paint. Also, no account should be taken of any coating, surfacing or rendering which does not itself provide all the weather resistance.
- 6.24 Where cladding is impermeable to water vapour there should be a ventilated cavity behind it.
- 6.25 Jointless materials and materials with sealed joints should allow for structural and thermal movement.
- 6.26 Dry joints between cladding units should be designed so that precipitation will not pass through them, or the cladding should be designed so that precipitation which enters the joints will be directed towards the exposed face without it penetrating beyond the back of the cladding.

Whether dry joints are suitable or not will depend on the design of the joint or the design of the cladding and the severity of the exposure to wind and rain.

- 6.27 Each sheet, tile and section of cladding should be securely fixed. Guidance as to appropriate fixing methods is given in BS 8000-6. Particular care should be taken with detailing and workmanship at the junctions between cladding and window and door openings as they are vulnerable to moisture ingress.
- 6.28 Insulation can be incorporated into the construction provided it is either protected from moisture or is unaffected by it.
- 6.29 Where cladding is supported by timber components or is on the façade of a timber framed building, the space between the cladding and the building should be ventilated to ensure rapid drying of any water that penetrates the cladding.
- 6.30 The requirement to resist the passage of moisture from the weather can also be met by following the relevant recommendations of –
- (a) BS CP 143 for sheet roof and wall coverings made from the following materials –
 - Part 1: 1958 for corrugated and troughed aluminium;
 - Part 5: 1964 for zinc;
 - Part 10: 1973 for galvanized corrugated steel;
 - Part 12: 1970 for copper; and
 - Part 15: 1973 for aluminium;Recommendations for lead are included in BS 6915;
 - (b) BS 8219 for profiled fibre cement;
 - (c) BS 8200 for the design of non-loadbearing external vertical enclosures of buildings;
 - (d) BS 8297 for design and installation of non-loadbearing precast concrete cladding;
 - (e) BS 8298 for design and installation of natural stone cladding and lining;
 - (f) Metal Cladding and Roofing Manufacturers Association (MCRMA) Technical Paper 6 *Profiled metal roofing design guide*; and
 - (g) MCRMA Technical Paper 9 *Composite roof and wall cladding panel design guide*.

These documents describe the materials and contain design considerations including recommendations for fixing.

Joint at doors and windows in external walls

- 6.31 The joint between walls and door or window frames should –
- (a) resist the penetration of precipitation to the inside of the building; and
 - (b) not be damaged by precipitation and not permit precipitation to reach any part of the building which would be damaged by it.

- 6.32 Damp proof courses should be provided to direct moisture towards the outside –
- (a) where the downward flow of moisture would be interrupted at an obstruction, e.g. at a lintel (see Diagram 6.3(b));
 - (b) where cill elements, including joints, do not form a complete barrier to the transfer of precipitation, e.g. under openings, windows and doors; and
 - (c) where reveal elements, including joints, do not form a complete barrier to the transfer of rain and snow, e.g. at openings, windows and doors.

Door thresholds in external walls

- 6.33 Guidance on weather protection of accessible thresholds is given in –
- (a) BRE Good Building Guide 47 *Level external thresholds: reducing moisture penetration and thermal bridging*; and
 - (b) The Stationery Office (TSO) document *Accessible thresholds in new buildings: guidance for house builders and designers*.
- See also BS 8300 which provides guidance on the design of entrance thresholds to meet the needs of disabled people.

Consultation
Version
only

General

- 7.1 Roofs should –
- (a) resist the passage of moisture caused by the weather to the inside of the building; and
 - (b) not be damaged by the weather and not carry precipitation to any part of the building which would be damaged by it.

Resistance to moisture from the outside

- 7.2 Roofing can be designed to protect a building from the weather either by holding the precipitation at the face of the roof or by stopping it from penetrating beyond the back of the roofing system.
- 7.3 Any roof will meet the requirement if –
- (a) it is jointless or has sealed joints, and is impervious to moisture (including metal, plastic, glass and bituminous products) so that moisture will not enter the roofing system; or
 - (b) it has overlapping dry joints, is impervious or weather resisting (such as natural stone or slate, cement based products, fired clay and wood), and is backed by a material which will direct precipitation which enters the roof towards the outer face (as with underlay).

Some materials can deteriorate rapidly without special care and they should only be used as the weather resisting part of a roofing system if certain conditions are met (see Part B Materials and workmanship of the Building Regulations). In determining whether a material is of a suitable nature and quality for use as the weather resisting part of a roof no account may be taken of any paint. Also, no account may be taken of any coating or rendering which does not itself provide all the weather resistance.

- 7.4 Where cladding is impermeable to water vapour there should be a ventilated air space behind the cladding.
- 7.5 Jointless materials and materials with sealed joints should allow for structural and thermal movement.
- 7.6 Dry joints between roofing sheets should be designed so that precipitation will not pass through them, or the system should be designed so that precipitation which enters the joints will be drained away without penetrating beyond the back of the roofing system.
- Whether dry joints are suitable or not will depend on the design of the joint or the design of the roofing system and the severity of the exposure to wind and rain.
- 7.7 Each sheet, tile and section of roof should be fixed in an appropriate manner. Guidance as to appropriate fixing methods is given in BS 8000-6.

7.8 The requirement to resist the passage of moisture from the weather can also be met by following the relevant recommendations of –

(a) BS CP 143 for sheet roof and wall coverings made from the following materials –

Part 1: 1958 for corrugated and troughed aluminium;

Part 5: 1964 for zinc;

Part 10: 1973 for galvanized corrugated steel;

Part 12: 1970 for copper; and

Part 15: 1973 for aluminium;

Recommendations for lead are included in BS 6915;

(b) BS 8200 for the design of non-loadbearing external vertical enclosures of buildings;

(c) BS 8219 for profiled fibre cement;

(d) MCRMA Technical Paper 6 *Profiled metal roofing design guide*; and

(e) MCRMA Technical Paper 9 *Composite roof and wall cladding panel design guide*.

These documents describe the materials and contain design considerations including recommendations for fixing.

Consultation
Version
only

Interstitial condensation

- 8.1 Regulation 29 (Condensation) applies only to dwellings.
- 8.2 A dwelling should meet the requirement to avoid any harmful effects caused by interstitial condensation if it is designed and constructed in accordance with BS 5250. Guidance is also given in the BRE Report BR 262 *Thermal insulation: avoiding risks*.

Consultation
Version
only

British Standards (BS)

BS EN 998-2: 2003 Specification for mortar for masonry. Masonry mortar.

BS EN 13914-1:2005 Design, preparation and application of external rendering and internal plastering. External rendering.

BS 1282: 1999 Wood preservatives. Guidance on choice, use and application.

BS 5250: 2011 Code of practice for the control of condensation in buildings.

BS 5628-3: 2005 Code of practice for use of masonry. Materials and components, design and workmanship.

BS 5930: 1999 Code of practice for site investigations.

BS 6915: 2001 Design and construction of fully supported lead sheet roof and wall coverings. Code of practice.

BS 8000-6: 1990 Workmanship on building sites. Code of practice for slating and tiling of roofs and claddings.

BS 8102: 2009 Code of practice for protection of below ground structures against water from the ground.

BS 8103-1: 1995 Structural design of low rise buildings. Code of practice for stability, site investigation, foundations and ground floor slabs for housing.
AMD 8980 1995.

BS 8104: 1992 Code of practice for assessing exposure of walls to wind driven rain. AMD 8358 1995.

BS 8200: 1985 Code of practice for the design of non-loadbearing external vertical enclosures of buildings.

BS 8208-1: 1985 Guide to assessment of suitability of external cavity walls for filling with thermal insulants. Existing traditional cavity construction.
AMD 4996 1985.

BS 8215: 1991 Code of practice for design and installation of damp proof courses in masonry construction.

BS 8219: 2001 Installation of sheet roof and wall coverings. Profiled fibre cement. Code of practice.

BS 8297: 2000 Code of practice for design and installation of non-loadbearing precast concrete cladding.
AMD 11064 2000,
AMD 13018 2000.

BS 8298: 1994 Code of practice for design and installation of natural stone cladding and lining.

BS 8300: 2009 +A1: 2010 Design of buildings and their approaches to meet the needs of disabled people. Code of practice.

BS 8500-1: 2006 Concrete. Complementary British Standard to BS EN 206-1. Method of specifying and guidance for the specifier.

CP 143 Code of Practice for sheet roof and wall coverings.

Part 1: 1958 Aluminium, corrugated and troughed. PD 4346 1961.

Part 5: 1964 Zinc.

Part 10: 1973 Galvanized corrugated steel.

Part 12: 1970 Copper. AMD 863 1972, AMD 5193 1987.

Part 15: 1973 Aluminium. AMD 4473 1984.

Amendments are shown by either an AMD or PD number and year of issue.

British Research Establishment (BRE)

BRE Building elements: walls, windows and doors – performance, diagnosis, maintenance, repair and avoidance of defects, 1998.

Digest 276 Hardcore, 1992.

Digest 318 Site investigation for low-rise building: desk studies, 1987.

Digest 322 Site investigation for low-rise building: procurement, 1987.

Digest 348 Site investigation for low-rise building: the walk-over survey, 1989.

Digest 381 Site investigation for low-rise building: trial pits, 1993.

Digest 383 Site investigation for low-rise building: soil description, 1993.

Digest 411 Site investigation for low-rise building: direct investigations, 1995.

Digest 427 Low-rise buildings on fill: classification and load-carrying characteristics: Part 1, 1997.

Digest 427 Low-rise buildings on fill: site investigation, ground movement and foundation design: Part 2, 1998.

Digest 427 Low-rise buildings on fill: engineered fill: Part 3, 1998.

Good Building Guide 47 Level external thresholds: reducing moisture penetration and thermal bridging, 2001.

Good Building Guide 73 Radon protection for new domestic extensions and conservatories with solid concrete ground floors, 2008.

Report 211 Radon: guidance on protective measures for new buildings, 2015.

Report 262 Thermal insulation: avoiding risks, 2002.

Report 267 Major alterations and conversions: a BRE guide to radon remedial measures in existing dwellings, 1994.

Report 292 Cracking in buildings, 1996.

Report 413 Radon: guidance on protective measures for new buildings in Northern Ireland, 2001.

Report 424 Building fill: Geotechnical aspects. 2nd edition, 2001.

Special Digest 1 Concrete in aggressive ground: assessing the aggressive chemical environment: Part 1, 2005.

Construction Industry Research and Information Association (CIRIA)

C506 Low-cost options for prevention of flooding from sewers, 1998.

Communities and Local Government (CLG)

Improving the flood performance of new buildings – flood resilient construction, 2007.

Preparing for floods: interim guidance for improving the flood resistance of domestic and small business properties, 2002. (reprinted with amendments 2003).

Approved Document H Drainage and Waste Disposal, 2010.

Department of Environment for Northern Ireland (DOE NI)

PPS 15 Planning and flood risk, 2006.

Health Protection Agency

Radon in Dwellings in Northern Ireland: 2009 review and atlas, 2009.

Metal Cladding and Roofing Manufacturers Association (MCRMA)

Technical Paper 6 Profiled metal roofing design guide, revised edition 2004.

Technical Paper 9 Composite roof and wall cladding panel design guide, 1995.

Scottish Office

Design guidance on flood damage to dwellings, 1996.

The Stationery Office (TSO)

Accessible thresholds in new buildings: guidance for house builders and designers, 1999.

Other publications

Technical Booklet B: 2012 – Materials and workmanship

Technical Booklets

The following list comprises the series of Technical Booklets prepared by the Department for the purpose of providing practical guidance with respect to the technical requirements of the Building Regulations (Northern Ireland) 2012.

Technical Booklet B	Materials and workmanship
Technical Booklet C	Site preparation and resistance to contaminants and moisture
Technical Booklet D	Structure
Technical Booklet E	Fire safety
Technical Booklet F1	Conservation of fuel and power in dwellings
Technical Booklet F2	Conservation of fuel and power in buildings other than dwellings
Technical Booklet G	Resistance to the passage of sound
Technical Booklet H	Stairs, ramps, guarding and protection from impact
Technical Booklet J	Solid waste in buildings
Technical Booklet K	Ventilation
Technical Booklet L	Combustion appliances and fuel storage systems
Technical Booklet M	Physical infrastructure for high-speed electronic communications networks
Technical Booklet N	Drainage
Technical Booklet P	Sanitary appliances, unvented hot water storage systems and reducing the risk of scalding
Technical Booklet R	Access to and use of buildings
Technical Booklet V	Glazing

Any person who intends to demonstrate compliance with the Building Regulations by following the guidance given in a Technical Booklet is advised to ensure that the guidance is current on the date when the plans are deposited or notice given to the district council.

Building (Amendment) Regulations (Northern Ireland) 2020

EU NOTIFICATION

Technical Booklet E - Fire Safety

Consultation Draft

August 2020

(closing date for receipt of responses is 4.00 pm Friday 09/10/2020)

Notes:

- 1. Proposed new text is marked in red.**
- 2. Existing text to be deleted is struck through.**

	page
Introduction	4
Technical Booklets	4
This Technical Booklet	4
Protected buildings	5
Other legislation	5
Commission guidance papers and decisions	6
Part E Regulations	8
Guidance – Performance and introduction to provisions	10
Means of escape	10
Internal fire spread – Linings	13
Internal fire spread – Structure	13
External fire spread	15
Facilities and access for the Fire and Rescue Service	16
Use of this Technical Booklet	17
Section 1 General	18
Definitions	18
General guidance	25
Non-combustible materials	26
Materials of limited combustibility	27
Classification	27
Performance of materials, products and structures	28
Alternative approaches	29
Section 2 Means of escape	28
Dwellinghouses	28
Introduction	28
Common provisions	28
Roof space conversions	33

Automatic fire detection and fire alarm systems in dwellinghouses	37
Flats	39
Means of escape	39
Automatic fire detection and fire alarm systems in flats	39
Buildings other than dwellings	40
Horizontal part of the escape route	40
Vertical part of the escape route	53
General provisions	68
Section 3 Internal fire spread - Linings	76
Classification of performance of materials or products (National classification)	76
Classification of performance of materials or products (European classification)	78
Performance of wall and ceiling linings	79
Section 4 Internal fire spread - Structure	83
Tests for fire resistance	83
Fire resistance of elements of structure and certain other components of the building	89
Compartmentation	95
Protected shafts between compartments	100
Fire doors	102
Provision of cavity barriers	106
Pipes penetrating fire separating elements	114
Car parks for light vehicles	118
Shopping complexes	120
Insulating core panels used for internal structures	121
Section 5 External fire spread	125
Construction Fire resistance of external walls	125
Combustibility of external walls	125
Regulation 23(2)	131
Space separation - External walls	133
Provisions for and calculation of space separation and unprotected areas	136

Canopies	145	
Roofs	146	
Section 6	Facilities and access for the Fire and Rescue Service	153
Firefighting shafts	153	
Venting of heat and smoke from basements	156	
Rolling shutters in compartment walls	158	
Vehicle access	158	
Appendix A	Purpose Groups	161
Appendix B	Rules for measurement	163
Appendix C	Publications referred to	167

Consultation
Version
only

Technical Booklets

This Technical Booklet, which takes effect on 31st October 2012 is one of a series that has been prepared by the Department of Finance and Personnel (the Department) for the purpose of providing practical guidance with respect to the technical requirements of the Building Regulations (Northern Ireland) 2012 (as amended) (the Building Regulations).

At the back of each Technical Booklet is a list of all the Technical Booklets that have been prepared and published by the Department for this purpose.

The guidance given in a Technical Booklet includes performance standards and design provisions relating to compliance with specific aspects of the Building Regulations for the more common building situations.

If the guidance in a Technical Booklet is followed there will be a presumption of compliance with the requirements of those Building Regulations covered by that guidance. However, this presumption can be overturned, so simply following the guidance does not guarantee compliance. For example, if a particular circumstance is not one of the more common building situations the design provisions given in the Technical Booklet may not be appropriate.

There are likely to be alternative ways of demonstrating compliance with the relevant requirements of the Building Regulations other than by following a design provision given in a Technical Booklet. There is therefore no obligation to adopt any particular provision set out in a Technical Booklet, should you decide to comply in some other way. However, you will have to demonstrate that your alternative solution meets the relevant requirements of the Building Regulations by those other means.

This Technical Booklet

Requirements

The guidance contained in this Technical Booklet relates only to the requirements of regulations 33, 34, 35, 36 and 37. The work will also have to comply with all other relevant requirements of the Building Regulations.

Materials and workmanship

Any building work which is subject to requirements imposed by Part A of the Building Regulations should be carried out in accordance with regulation 23 of those regulations. Guidance on meeting these requirements for materials and workmanship is given in Technical Booklet B which supports Part B.

The Building Regulations are made for specific purposes, primarily securing the health, safety, welfare and convenience of people and for the conservation of fuel and power. Standards and technical approvals are relevant guidance to the extent that they relate to these purposes. However, they may also address other aspects of performance such as serviceability, or aspects which although they relate to health and safety are not covered by the Building Regulations.

Named standards

Where this Technical Booklet makes reference to a named standard, the relevant version of the standard is the one listed in Appendix C. However, if this version has been replaced or updated by the issuing standards body, the new version may be used as a source of guidance provided that it continues to address the relevant requirements of the Building Regulations.

Diagrams

The diagrams in this Technical Booklet supplement the text. They do not show all the details of construction and are not intended to illustrate compliance with any other requirement of the Building Regulations. They are not necessarily to scale and should not be used as working details.

Protected buildings

District councils have a duty to take account of the desirability to preserve the character of protected buildings when carrying out their functions under Building Regulations. Therefore, where work is to be carried out to a protected building to comply with Part E or any other Part of the Building Regulations, special consideration may be given to the extent of such work for compliance where it would unacceptably alter the character or appearance of the building. Protected buildings are defined in Article 3A(2) of the Building Regulations (Northern Ireland) Order 1979 (as amended).

Other legislation

The provisions of this Technical Booklet relate to the requirements of Building Regulations and do not include measures which may be necessary to meet the requirements of other legislation. Such other legislation may operate during the design or construction stages or when a building is brought into use and can extend to cover aspects which are outside the scope of the Building Regulations.

The Fire and Rescue Services (Northern Ireland) Order 2006

The main legislation in this area is the Fire and Rescue Services (Northern Ireland) Order 2006 and the associated Fire Safety Regulations (Northern Ireland) 2010. This legislation imposes a general duty to take such fire precautions as may be reasonably required to ensure that relevant premises are safe for the occupants and those in the immediate vicinity. By virtue of this legislation certain duty holders are required to carry out and continually review a fire risk assessment of the workplace and the relevant premises.

The Workplace (Health, Safety and Welfare) Regulations (Northern Ireland) 1993

The Workplace (Health, Safety and Welfare) Regulations (Northern Ireland) 1993 (the Workplace Regulations) contain some requirements which affect building design. The main requirements are now covered by the Building Regulations, but for further information see – The Workplace Regulations and the *Workplace Health, Safety and Welfare Approved Code of Practice and Guidance* published by TSO.

The Workplace Regulations apply to the common parts of flats and similar buildings if people such as cleaners, wardens and caretakers are employed to work in these common parts. Where the requirements of the Building Regulations that are covered by Part E do not apply to dwellings, the provisions may still be required in the situations described above in order to satisfy the Workplace Regulations.

The Construction (Design and Management) Regulations (Northern Ireland) 2007

The Construction (Design and Management) Regulations (Northern Ireland) 2007 impose requirements which affect building design. These include, amongst other things, the need for co-ordination, co-operation and communication between all parties in the construction process.

The purpose of this Technical Booklet is to provide guidance on the fire safety requirements for the completed building. It does not address the risk of fire during the construction work which is covered by the Construction (Design and Management) Regulations (Northern Ireland) 2007. HSE has issued the following guidance on fire safety in construction – *Construction information sheet No 51 Construction fire safety; and HSG 168 Fire safety in construction work*.

When the construction work is being carried out on a building which, apart from the construction site part of the building, is occupied, the Northern Ireland Fire and Rescue Service Board is responsible for the enforcement of the 2007 Regulations in respect of fire. Where the building is unoccupied, the Health and Safety Executive is responsible for enforcement on the construction site.

Commission guidance papers and decisions

The following guidance papers and Commission Decisions are directly relevant to fire matters under the Construction Products Directive –

Guidance paper G – The European classification system for the reaction to fire performance of construction products.

Guidance paper J – Transitional arrangements under the Construction Products Directive.

Commission Decision of 8 February 2000 (2000/147/EC) implementing Council Directive 89/106/EEC as regards the classification of the reaction to fire performance of construction products.

Commission Decision of 3 May 2000 (2000/367/EC) implementing Council Directive 89/106/EEC as regards the classification of the resistance to fire performance of construction products, construction works and parts thereof.

Consultation
Version
only

Part E Regulations

Part E (comprising regulations 32 to 37) of the Building Regulations, which sets out the requirements for Fire safety, has been replicated below for the convenience of the user of this Technical Booklet and is taken directly from the Building Regulations (Northern Ireland) 2012 (as amended).

Any person who intends to demonstrate compliance with the Building Regulations by following the guidance given in this Technical Booklet is advised to ensure that the regulations below, are current on the date when plans are deposited or notices given to the district council.

As Part A (comprising regulations 1 to 21) of the Building Regulations sets out the Interpretation along with the procedural requirements relating to the application of the regulations, the Department advises that all Parts of the Building Regulations are read in conjunction with Part A of those regulations.

The Building Regulations (Northern Ireland) 2012 and any subsequent amendment/s may be viewed by following the links from the Department's website at "www.finance-ni.gov.uk/articles/building-regulations-northern-ireland" buildingregulationsni.gov.uk."

PART E

Fire safety

Application and interpretation

32.—(1) Regulations 33 and 35(3) shall not apply to a prison within the meaning of the Prisons Act (Northern Ireland) 1953(a) or any other place of lawful detention.

(2) In this Part—

“Dwelling” means a self-contained unit of residential accommodation occupied (whether or not as a sole or main residence)—

- (a) by a single person or by people living together as a family; or
- (b) by not more than 6 people living together as a single household, including a household where care is provided for residents;

“Dwellinghouse” means a dwelling on one or more storeys which is detached or forms part of a building from all other parts of which it is divided only vertically and does not include a flat;

“Flat” has the meaning assigned to it by regulation 2 in Part A;

“Internal linings” means the materials lining any partition, wall, ceiling or other internal structure;

“Means of escape” means structural means whereby, in the event of a fire, a safe route or routes is or are provided for people to travel from any point in a building to a place of safety; and

“Place of safety” means a place, outside the building, in which people are in no danger from fire within the building.

(a) 1953 c. 18 (N.I.)

Means of escape

- 33.** A building shall be so designed and constructed that in the event of a fire there is—
- (a) where appropriate, adequate means of automatic detection;
 - (b) adequate means of giving warning; and
 - (c) adequate means of escape, which can be safely and effectively used at all material times.

Internal fire spread – Linings

- 34.** To inhibit the spread of fire within a building the internal linings shall—
- (a) offer adequate resistance to the spread of flame over their surfaces; and
 - (b) where they are located in a circulation space, have a low rate of heat release or a low rate of fire growth when ignited.

Internal fire spread – Structure

35.—(1) A building shall be so designed and constructed that, in the event of a fire, its stability will be retained for a reasonable period.

(2) A wall common to two or more buildings shall be so designed and constructed that it provides adequate resistance to the spread of fire between those buildings and for the purposes of this paragraph a dwellinghouse in a terrace and a semi-detached dwellinghouse shall be considered as a separate building.

(3) To inhibit the spread of fire within it, a building shall be adequately sub-divided with fire-resisting construction.

(4) A building shall be so designed and constructed that the spread of fire (and in particular smoke) within concealed spaces in its structure and fabric is adequately inhibited.

External fire spread

36. The external walls and roof of a building shall be so designed and constructed that they afford adequate resistance to the spread of fire over them, and from one building to another, having regard to—

- (a) in the case of an external wall - the use, position and height of the building; and
- (b) in the case of a roof - the use and position of the building.

Facilities and access for the Fire and Rescue Service

37.—(1) A building shall be designed and constructed with such reasonable facilities as are necessary to assist the Fire and Rescue Service in ensuring the safety of people in and about the building in the event of a fire.

(2) Reasonable provisions shall be made within the boundary of the premises for access to the building by fire and rescue appliances for the purpose of paragraph (1).

Means of escape

Performance

- 0.1 It is the view of the Department that the requirements of regulation 33 in Part E will be met if there is sufficient means for giving early warning of fire for persons in a building and –
- (a) if there are routes of sufficient number and capacity, which are suitably located to enable persons to escape to a place of safety in the event of fire;
 - (b) if the routes are sufficiently protected from the effects of fire by enclosure where necessary;
 - (c) if the routes are adequately lit;
 - (d) if the exits are suitably signed; and
 - (e) if there are appropriate facilities to either limit the ingress of smoke to the escape route(s) or to restrict the fire and remove smoke.

The extent to which the measures in respect of escape routes are necessary is dependent on the use of the building, its size and height.

Introduction to provisions in Section 2

- 0.2 The guidance in Section 2 is concerned with ensuring that occupants are given warning of, and have a means of escape from, a fire. It only refers to structural fire precautions where these are necessary to safeguard an escape route. The provisions have been prepared on the basis that the occupants of any part of a building should be able to escape from the building, in the event of a fire, without external assistance.

In dwellings and certain other buildings an automatic fire detection and alarm system can significantly increase the level of safety by automatically giving an early warning of fire. In other buildings an appropriate fire alarm system should provide adequate warning to occupants.

The design of the means of escape is based on the assumption that a fire will start in only one location and initially be a hazard in that area only. Subsequently it may spread to other parts, usually through circulation routes. Furnishings and equipment are not covered by the Building Regulations but are usually the items first ignited in a fire. A fire is less likely to start within the structure of the building or in a circulation area.

The primary danger in the early stages of a fire is not flame but smoke and other products of combustion which can directly affect the occupants of the building and obscure the escape routes. Measures designed to provide safe means of escape must therefore include provisions to limit the spread of smoke and other products of combustion.

The basic principles for the design of means of escape are –

- (a) there should be alternative means of escape from most locations so that people can turn their back on a fire and travel away from it to a place of safety; and
- (b) where direct escape to a place of safety is not possible, the aim is to reach a place of relative safety, such as a protected stairway, within a reasonable travel distance. In such cases the escape route should consist of two parts – the first part in unprotected rooms and circulation areas, and the second part in protected stairways and in some circumstances protected corridors.

A protected stairway is considered to be a place of relative safety within which people can proceed at their own pace to a place of safety. Smoke and flames must be excluded from protected stairways by fire and smoke-resisting construction or by an appropriate smoke control system or both.

The ultimate place of safety is the open air clear of the effects of the fire.

The following are not acceptable for means of escape –

- (i) a lift (except a suitably designed and installed evacuation lift);
- (ii) a passenger conveyor or escalator;
- (iii) a portable or throw-out ladder; and
- (iv) manipulative apparatus and appliances.

Specific approaches for the design of means of escape

Shopping complexes

0.3 Although the guidance in Section 2 may be readily applied to individual shops, shopping complexes present a different set of escape problems. The design of shop units within a shopping complex should be compatible with the fire strategy for the complex as a whole. A suitable approach is given in the relevant recommendations of BS 5588-10.

Note – BS 5588-10 applies more restrictive provisions to shop units with only one exit in covered shopping complexes.

Health care premises

0.4 Health care premises including hospitals and residential health care buildings are quite diverse and can be used by a variety of patients, often requiring different types of care to suit their specific needs. The choice of fire safety strategy is dependent upon the way a building is designed, furnished, staffed and managed and the level of dependency of the patients.

In parts of health care premises designed to be used by patients, where there are people who are bedridden or who have very restricted mobility, the principle of total evacuation in the event of a fire may be inappropriate. It is also unrealistic to suppose that all patients will leave without assistance. In this and other ways the specialised nature of some health care premises demands a different approach to the provision of means of escape, from much of that embodied in the guidance given in Section 2.

The Department of Health, Social Services and Public Safety has produced a set of guidance documents on fire precautions in health care buildings under the general title of the *Northern Ireland Firecode*.

A suitable approach for the design of means of escape in health care premises is given in the relevant publications contained in the *Northern Ireland Firecode*. (These documents may also be used for non-NHS health care premises.)

Assembly buildings

- 0.5 There are particular problems that arise when fixed seating impinges on people's ability to escape in the event of a fire. This may occur at sports grounds, theatres, lecture halls and conference centres etc. Guidance on this and other aspects of means of escape in an Assembly building is given in Sections 3 and 5 of BS 5588-6 and the relevant recommendations of that code should be followed in appropriate cases. In the case of buildings to which The Safety of Sports Grounds (Northern Ireland) Order 2006 applies the relevant guidance in the *Northern Ireland guide to safety at sports grounds* should be followed.

Houses in multiple occupation (HMO)

- 0.6 A suitable approach for the design of means of escape in a house in multiple occupation is given in the relevant provisions of Section 5 of DOE Circular 12/92: *Houses in multiple occupation*.

The licensing of HMOs in Northern Ireland is overseen by the Housing Executive which may require additional measures. The Housing Executive has published the following guidance: *Houses in multiple occupation, Fire safety guide*.

Hotels and boarding houses

- 0.7 A suitable approach for the design of means of escape in a Hotel or Boarding House is given in the relevant provisions of Chapters 13 and 14 of the *Guide to fire precautions in premises used as hotels or boarding houses which require a fire certificate* published by the Home Office: 1991.

Schools

- 0.8 Although the guidance in this Technical Booklet applies to schools, additional life safety guidance in respect of means of escape may be found in *BB 100: Design for fire safety in schools*.

Internal fire spread – Linings

Performance

- 0.9 It is the view of the Department that the requirements of regulation 34 in Part E will be met if the spread of flame over the internal linings of a building is restricted by making provision for them to have low rates of surface spread of flame, and in some cases to have a low rate of heat release, so as to limit the contribution that the fabric of the building makes to fire growth. In relation to the European fire tests and classification system, the requirements of regulation 34 in Part E will be met if the heat released from the internal linings is restricted by making provision for them to have a resistance to ignition and a rate of fire growth which are reasonable in the circumstances.

The extent to which this is necessary is dependent on the location of the linings.

Introduction to provisions in Section 3

- 0.10 The materials used for the linings of walls and ceilings in a building can significantly affect the spread of fire and its rate of growth. The guidance in Section 3 restricts the spread of fire over internal linings by ensuring they have low rates of surface spread of flame. In some locations the internal linings must also have a low rate of heat production so as to limit the contribution that the fabric of the building makes to fire growth.

There are no provisions in relation to the upper surfaces of floors and stairs because such surfaces are not involved significantly in a fire until it is well developed. They do not therefore play an important part in fire spread during the early stages of a fire, which are the most relevant to the life safety of occupants.

Although furniture and fittings can have a major effect on fire spread it is not possible to control them through Building Regulations, and no provisions relating to them are included in this Technical Booklet. The fire characteristics of furniture and fittings may be controlled in some buildings under other legislation which applies to those buildings when in use.

Internal fire spread – Structure

Performance

- 0.11 It is the view of the Department that the requirements of regulation 35 in Part E will be met –
- (a) if the loadbearing elements of structure of a building are capable of withstanding the effects of fire for an appropriate period without loss of stability;
 - (b) if a building is sub-divided by elements of fire-resisting construction into compartments;
 - (c) if any openings in fire-separating elements are suitably protected in order to maintain the integrity of the element (i.e. the continuity of the fire separation); and

-
- (d) if any hidden voids in the construction are sealed and subdivided to inhibit the unseen spread of fire and products of combustion, in order to reduce the risk of structural failure, and the spread of fire, in so far as they pose a threat to the safety of people in and around the building.

The extent to which any of these measures are necessary is dependent on the use of the building, in some cases its size, and on the location of the element of construction.

Introduction to provisions in Section 4

- 0.12 The guidance in Section 4 is concerned with the spread of fire within a building. This can be restricted by the provision of structural measures such as fire-resisting elements of construction, compartmentation, cavity barriers and fire-stopping.

Fire-resisting elements of construction – the objective of providing the elements of structure and certain other components of the building with a minimum standard of fire resistance is to minimise the risk to the occupants whilst evacuating, to the firefighting personnel whilst engaged in search and rescue operations and to people in the vicinity of the building who may be hurt by falling debris or as a result of the impact of the collapsing building on another building.

Compartmentation – the spread of fire within a building can be restricted by subdividing it into compartments separated from one another by walls and/or floors of fire-resisting construction. The objectives are to prevent rapid fire spread, which could trap occupants of the building, and to reduce the chance of a fire becoming large, on the basis that a large fire is more dangerous, not only to occupants and firefighting personnel, but to people in the vicinity of the building.

Cavity barriers – concealed and extensive spaces within construction provide a ready route for the hidden spread of smoke and flame. The objectives of cavity barriers are to limit the extent of such spaces and to subdivide them where they would otherwise form a pathway around fire-resisting construction.

Protection of penetrations – in order that the fire integrity of elements of structure intended to provide fire separation is maintained, penetrations of such construction, by pipes, ducts, cables, etc. must be suitably protected.

Fire-stopping – the objective of fire-stopping is to adequately seal or protect every joint, imperfection of fit, opening and penetration in an element of structure intended to provide fire separation, so that its effectiveness is not impaired.

This Section also contains guidance relating to car parks for light vehicles. In buildings or separated parts of buildings used as parking for cars and other light vehicles the fire load is well defined and not particularly high. Fire spread is not likely to occur between one vehicle and another. Where the car park is well ventilated (so that heat and smoke can dissipate readily) there is a low probability of fire spread from one storey to another.

External fire spread

Performance

- 0.13 It is the view of the Department that the requirements of regulation 36 in Part E will be met –
- (a) if the external walls are constructed so that the risk of ignition from an external source, and the spread of fire over their surfaces, is restricted by making provision for them to have low rates of heat release;
 - (b) if the amount of unprotected area in the side of a building is restricted so as to limit the amount of thermal radiation that can pass through the wall, taking the distance between the wall and the boundary into account; and
 - (c) if the roof is constructed so that the risk of spread of flame and/or fire penetration from an external fire source is restricted,

in each case so as to limit the risk of a fire spreading from the building to another building beyond the boundary, or vice versa.

The extent to which this is necessary is dependent on the use of the building, its distance from the boundary and, in some cases, its height.

Introduction to provisions in Section 5

- 0.14 The guidance in Section 5 which relates to the extent to which fire may spread over and between buildings depends on the size and intensity of the fire, the construction of the external walls and roof, and the distance between the buildings.

Construction of walls – the fire resistance of an external wall and the combustibility of its external face are controlled to reduce its susceptibility to ignition from an external source and the danger from fire spreading up the external face of the building.

Construction of roofs – the combustibility of the external surface of a roof is controlled to reduce its susceptibility to ignition from an external source.

Distance between buildings – adequate separation between buildings is achieved by relating the amount of unprotected area (e.g. windows, areas of combustible wall, etc.) in the wall of a building or compartment to the distance that wall is from its relevant boundary. It may be advantageous to reduce compartment sizes or to provide compartmentation where none would otherwise be necessary, as this will reduce the size of the fire and may permit a reduced boundary distance or alternatively, an increase in unprotected area.

Facilities and access for the Fire and Rescue Service

Performance

- 0.15 It is the view of the Department that the requirements of regulation 37 in Part E will be met –
- (a) if there is sufficient means of external access to enable fire appliances to be brought near to a building for effective use;
 - (b) if there is sufficient means of access into, and within, a building for firefighting personnel to effect search and rescue and fight fire;
 - (c) if a building is provided with sufficient internal fire mains and other facilities to assist firefighters in their tasks; and
 - (d) if a building is provided with adequate means for venting heat and smoke from a fire in a basement.

These access arrangements and facilities are only required in the interests of the health and safety of people in and around the building. The extent to which they are required will depend on the use and size of the building in so far as it affects the health and safety of those people.

Introduction to provisions in Section 6

- 0.16 The guidance in Section 6 relating to facilities and access is for the purposes of assisting the Fire and Rescue Service to ensure the safety of people in and around a building.

Generally in small buildings the combination of the access offered by the normal means of access and egress, and the ability of the Fire and Rescue Service to work from ladders and appliances are sufficient without special access or internal facilities. However, in large buildings and buildings with basements the Fire and Rescue Service will invariably work inside the building and firefighting shafts, fire mains, venting of basements and access will be necessary.

Firefighting shafts – the provisions are to ensure that the Fire and Rescue Service will have a secure operating base on every storey of large buildings.

Fire mains – the purpose of a fire main within a firefighting shaft is to enable firefighters to connect hoses and receive a supply of water for firefighting and rescue activities.

Access – the provisions relating to vehicle access are to enable the Fire and Rescue Service's pumping appliances to supply water to the fire mains and for high reach appliances to be deployed.

Venting of basements – the enclosed nature of a basement prevents the dispersal of heat and smoke, which tend to rise up the access that the Fire and Rescue Service may be using to approach the fire. The provisions for smoke removal facilities are to enable firefighters to more effectively search for and rescue any people who may be trapped, and to locate and attack the fire.

Use of this Technical Booklet

Relationship between Sections

- 0.17 The guidance set out in this Technical Booklet under Sections 2 to 6 deals with different aspects of fire safety. Whilst the guidance appropriate to each of these aspects is set out separately, many of the provisions are closely interlinked. For example, there is a close link between the provisions for means of escape (Section 2) and those for the control of fire growth (Section 3), fire containment (Section 4) and facilities for the Fire and Rescue Service (Section 6). Similarly, there are links between Section 4 and the provisions for controlling external fire spread (Section 5), and between Section 4 and Section 6. Interaction between these different provisions should be recognised when considering alternative solutions, as the adoption of a higher standard of provision in respect of one aspect may be of benefit in respect to the provisions relating to one or more other aspects. Thus the provisions in the Technical Booklet as a whole should be considered as a package aimed at achieving an acceptable standard of fire safety.

Provisions common to more than one Section

- 0.18 Within this Technical Booklet there are a number of matters which are relevant to more than one Section. Generally these have been located in the most appropriate Section and cross referenced where necessary. However, definitions, the classification of purpose groups and the methods for measurement are needed for all Sections. These have been drawn together for common reference in Section 1, Appendix A and Appendix B respectively.

Definitions

1.1 In this Technical Booklet the following definitions apply –

Access room – a room that forms the only escape route from an inner room.

Accommodation stairway – a stairway, additional to that or those required for escape purposes, provided for the convenience of occupants.

Alternative escape routes – escape routes sufficiently separated by either direction and space, or by fire-resisting construction, to ensure that one is still available should the other be affected by fire.

Alternative exit – one of two or more exits, each of which is separate from the other.

Appliance ventilation duct – a duct provided to convey combustion air to a gas appliance.

Atrium (plural atria) – a space within a building not necessarily vertically aligned, passing through one or more structural floors. (The term does not include enclosed lift wells, enclosed escalator wells, building services ducts and stairways.)

Automatic fire detection and alarm system – a system incorporating smoke detectors, sounders, control equipment, protected wiring and a back-up power supply which is capable of automatically detecting smoke and thereupon giving an audible alarm.

Automatic release mechanism – a device which will allow a door held open by it to close automatically in the event of each or any one of the following –

- (a) detection of smoke by automatic apparatus suitable in nature, quality and location;
- (b) operation of a hand operated switch fitted in a suitable position;
- (c) failure of electricity supply to the device, apparatus or switch; and
- (d) operation of the fire alarm system where fitted.

Automatic self-closing device – a device which is capable of closing a door from any angle and against any latch fitted to the door.

[The term does not include rising butt hinges unless the door is –

- (a) to (or within) a dwelling;
- (b) between a dwellinghouse and its garage; or
- (c) in a cavity barrier.]

Basement storey – a storey with a floor which at some point is more than 12 m below the highest level of ground adjacent to the outside walls.

Cavity barrier – a construction provided to close a concealed space against penetration of smoke or flame, or provided to restrict the movement of smoke or flame within such a space.

Ceiling – a part of a building which encloses and is exposed overhead in a room, protected shaft or circulation space. (The soffit of a rooflight, but not the frame is included as part of the ceiling surface. An upstand below a rooflight should be considered as wall.)

Circulation space – a space (including a protected stairway) mainly used as a means of access between a room and an exit from the building or compartment.

Class 0 – a product performance classification for wall and ceiling linings. The relevant test criteria are set out in paragraph 3.4.

Compartment – a building or part of a building, comprising one or more rooms, spaces or storeys, constructed to prevent the spread of fire to or from another part of the same building, or an adjoining building. A roof space above the top storey of a compartment is included in that compartment.

Compartment floor – a fire-resisting floor used in the separation of one compartment from another.

Compartment wall – a fire-resisting wall used in the separation of one compartment from another.

Concealed space or cavity – a space enclosed by elements of a building (including a suspended ceiling) or contained within an element, but not a room, cupboard, circulation space, protected shaft or space within a flue, chute, duct, pipe or conduit.

Dead end – area from which escape is possible in one direction only.

Direct distance – the shortest distance from any point within the floor area to the nearest storey exit, measured within the external enclosures of the building, ignoring walls, partitions and fittings, other than the enclosing walls/partitions to protected stairways.

Dwelling – has the meaning assigned to it by regulation 32 in Part E of the Building Regulations.

Dwellinghouse – has the meaning assigned to it by regulation 32 in Part E of the Building Regulations.

Element of structure –

- (a) a member forming part of the structural frame of a building or any other beam or column;
- (b) a loadbearing wall or loadbearing part of a wall;
- (c) a floor;
- (d) a gallery (but not a loading gallery, fly gallery, stage grid, lighting bridge, or any gallery provided for similar purposes or for maintenance and repair);
- (e) an external wall; and

-
- (f) a compartment wall (including a wall common to two or more buildings).

(However, see paragraph 4.11 for exclusions from the provisions for elements of structure.)

Emergency egress window – an openable window in a dwelling that may be used for emergency egress in order to avoid entrapment should the escape route or routes be blocked by fire or smoke.

Emergency lighting – lighting provided for use when the electricity supply to the normal lighting fails.

Escape lighting – that part of the emergency lighting which is provided to ensure that the escape route is illuminated at all material times.

Escape route – route forming that part of the means of escape from any point in a building to a final exit.

Evacuation lift – a lift that may be used for the evacuation of people in the event of a fire.

External wall (or side of a building) – ~~includes a part of a roof pitched at - an angle of more than 70° to the horizontal, if that part of the roof adjoins a space within the building to which persons have access (but not access only for repair or maintenance).~~

External wall – has the meaning assigned to it by regulation 22 in Part B of the Building regulations.

Final exit – the termination of an escape route from a building giving direct access to a street, passageway, walkway or open space, and sited to ensure the rapid dispersal of people from the vicinity of a building so that they are no longer in danger from fire or smoke or both. (A window is not acceptable as a final exit.)

Fire door – a door or shutter, provided for the passage of people, air or objects, which together with its frame and furniture as installed in a building, is intended (when closed) to resist the passage of fire or gaseous products of combustion or both, and is capable of meeting specified performance criteria to those ends. (It may have one or more leaves, and the term includes a cover or other form of protection to an opening in a fire-resisting wall or floor, or in a structure surrounding a protected shaft.)

Fire-resisting (fire resistance) – the ability of a component or construction of a building to satisfy for a stated period of time, some or all of the appropriate criteria specified in the relevant Part of BS 476.

Fire separating element – a compartment wall, compartment floor, cavity barrier and construction enclosing a protected shaft, protected escape route and a place of special fire hazard.

Fire stop – a seal provided to close an imperfection of fit or design tolerance between elements or components, to restrict or prevent the passage of fire and smoke.

Firefighting lift – a lift designed to have additional protection, with controls that enable it to be used under the direct control of the Fire and Rescue Service when fighting a fire.

Firefighting lobby – a protected lobby for providing access from a firefighting stairway to the accommodation area and to any associated firefighting lift.

Firefighting shaft – a protected enclosure containing a firefighting stairway, firefighting lobbies and, if provided, a firefighting lift together with its machinery.

Firefighting stairway – a protected stairway communicating with the accommodation area only through a firefighting lobby.

Flat – has the meaning assigned to it by regulation 32 in Part E of the Building Regulations.

Gallery – a floor, including a raised storage area, which is less than one-half of the floor area of the space into which it projects and is open both above and below to that space.

Hallway (Hall) – a circulation space inside the entrance to a dwelling used solely to give access to rooms and, where provided, a stairway.

Heat alarm – a device containing within one housing all the components, except possibly the energy source, necessary for detecting heat and giving an audible alarm.

Inner room – a room from which escape is possible only by passing through another room (access room).

Internal linings – has the meaning assigned to it by regulation 32 in Part E of the Building Regulations.

Materials of limited combustibility – materials which comply with paragraph 1.9 or 1.10.

Means of escape – has the meaning assigned to it by regulation 32 in Part E of the Building Regulations.

Measurement –

- (a) the rules for measuring area, cubic capacity, number of storeys, height of a building and height to a storey are given in paragraph B.1; and
- (b) the methods for measuring occupant capacity, travel distance, and the width of a doorway, escape route and stairway are given in Section 2.

Non-combustible material – a material which complies with paragraph 1.7 or 1.8.

Notional boundary – a boundary presumed to exist between buildings on the same site (see paragraph 5.9).

Open spatial planning – the internal arrangement of a building in which more than one storey or level is contained in one undivided volume, e.g. split-level floors and galleries. For the purposes of this Technical Booklet there is a distinction between open spatial planning and an atrium space.

Perimeter (of building) – the maximum aggregate plan perimeter excluding any wall separating buildings, found by vertical projection onto a horizontal plane.

Pipe – (for the purposes of Section 4) includes pipe fittings and accessories; and excludes a flue pipe and a pipe used for ventilating purposes (other than a ventilating pipe for an above ground drainage system).

Place of safety – has the meaning assigned to it by regulation 32 in Part E of the Building Regulations.

Places of special fire hazard – oil-filled transformer and switchgear rooms, boiler rooms, storage space for fuel or other highly flammable substances and rooms housing a fixed internal combustion engine. Additionally in schools – laboratories, technology rooms with open heat sources, kitchens and stores for PE mats (including landing mats and crash mats) or chemicals.

Platform floor (access or raised floor) – a floor supported by a structural floor, but with an intervening concealed space which is intended to house services.

Pressurization – a method of protecting escape routes against the ingress of smoke by maintaining the air within them at pressures higher than those in adjacent parts of the building.

Principal habitable room – the habitable room in a dwelling that is normally the most frequently used room for general daytime living purposes.

Protected circuit – an electrical circuit protected against fire.

Protected corridor or lobby – a corridor or lobby which is adequately protected from fire in adjoining accommodation by fire-resisting construction.

Protected entrance hall or landing – a circulation area consisting of a hall or space within a dwelling, enclosed with fire-resisting construction (other than any part which is an external wall or building).

Protected shaft – a shaft which enables people, air or objects to pass from one compartment to another, and which is enclosed with fire-resisting construction.

Protected stairway – a stairway discharging through a final exit to a place of safety (including any exit passageway between the foot of the stair and the final exit) that is adequately enclosed with fire-resisting construction.

Purpose group – a classification of buildings or compartments according to the purpose to which they are intended to be put (see paragraph A.2).

Refuge – an area that is adequately protected from fire in adjoining accommodation by fire-resisting construction and which is served directly by a safe route to a storey exit, thus constituting a temporarily safe place for people to use as part of their personal emergency evacuation plan.

Relevant boundary – the boundary which the side of the building faces, (and/or coincides with) and which is parallel, or at an angle of not more than 80°, to the side of the building. A notional boundary can be a relevant boundary.

Relevant building – has the meaning assigned to it by regulation 23(4) in Part B of the Building Regulations.

Rooflight – a domelight, lantern light, skylight, ridge light, glazed barrel vault or other element intended to admit daylight through a roof.

Room – (for the purposes of Section 3) an enclosed space within a building that is not used solely as a circulation space. (The term includes not only conventional rooms, but also cupboards that are not fittings, and large spaces such as warehouses, and auditoria. The term does not include voids such as ducts, ceiling voids and roof spaces.)

Separated part (of a building) – a form of compartmentation in which a part of a building is separated from another part of the same building by a compartment wall. The wall runs the full height of the part, and is in one vertical plane.

Single storey building – a building consisting only of a ground storey and any basement storeys. (A separated part which consists of a ground storey only, with a roof to which access is only provided for repair or maintenance, may be treated as a single storey building.)

Smoke alarm – a device containing within one housing all the components, except possibly the energy source, necessary for detecting smoke and giving an audible alarm.

Specified attachment – has the meaning assigned to it by regulation 22 in Part B of the Building Regulations.

Storey exit – a final exit, or a doorway giving direct access into a protected stairway, firefighting lobby, or external escape route. (In some circumstances a door in a compartment wall may be considered as a storey exit, e.g. in a building designed for progressive horizontal evacuation.)

Storey – includes –

- (a) in a building of Purpose Group 5 – a gallery [other than the exceptions given in paragraph B.1(c)]; and
- (b) in a building of any purpose group – a roof which is accessible unless it is accessible only for maintenance and repair.

Suspended ceiling (fire-protecting) – a ceiling suspended below a floor, which contributes to the fire resistance of the floor.

Thermoplastic material – a synthetic polymeric material which can be classified in accordance with paragraph 3.4 or 3.5.

Travel distance – the actual distance to be travelled by a person from any point within the floor area to the nearest storey exit, having regard to the layout of walls, partitions and fittings.

Unprotected area – in relation to a side or external wall of a building means –

- (a) a window, door or other opening;
- (b) any part of the external wall which has less than the relevant fire resistance set out in Table 4.1; and
- (c) any part of the external wall which has combustible material more than 1 mm thick attached or applied to its external face, whether for cladding or any other purpose.

Wall – for the purposes of Section 3 see paragraph 3.9.

Consultation
Version
only

General guidance

Buildings containing atria

- 12 For the purposes of this Technical Booklet the use of BS 5588-7 is relevant only where the atrium breaches compartmentation.

Inclusive design

- 13 The fire safety aspects of the Building Regulations are made for securing reasonable standards of health and safety of people in and about buildings. This is intended to include all people, including people with disabilities.

People, regardless of disability or age should be able to gain access to buildings and use their facilities, both as visitors and as people who live or work in them. Part R of the Building Regulations requires reasonable provision in this respect. As such the fire safety measures incorporated into a building will need to take account of the needs of all those people who may have access to the building. It is not appropriate, except in exceptional circumstances, to presume that certain groups of people will be excluded from a building because of its use.

The provisions set out in this Technical Booklet are considered to be a reasonable standard for most buildings. However, there may be some people whose specific needs are not addressed. In some situations additional fire safety measures may be needed to accommodate these needs. Such measures should be considered on a case by case basis.

Fire safety management

- 14 The provisions of this Technical Booklet have been written on the assumption that fire safety in the building concerned will be adequately managed.

Fire safety management is controlled by other legislation such as the Fire and Rescue Services (Northern Ireland) Order 2006 and the associated Fire Safety Regulations (Northern Ireland) 2010 for workplaces deemed to be relevant premises.

Fire Safety in Protected buildings

- 15 Some variation of the provisions set out in this booklet may be appropriate where Part E applies to protected buildings, where adherence to the guidance in this booklet might prove to be unduly restrictive. In such cases it would be appropriate to take into account a range of fire safety features, some of which are contained in this booklet and some of which are not addressed in any detail and to set these against an assessment of the hazards and risks peculiar to the particular case.

Property protection

- 1.6 Building Regulations are intended to ensure that an adequate standard of life safety is provided in case of fire. The protection of property, including the building itself, may require additional measures and insurers will in general seek their own measures if they are to accept the insurance risk. Such measures (e.g. locking doors on escape routes) must not negate or reduce the level of protection or performance of any provision in this Technical Booklet.

Non-combustible materials

- 1.7 A non-combustible material is under National classification –
- (a) a material classified as non-combustible when tested in accordance with BS 476: Part 4;
 - (b) a material which when tested in accordance with BS 476: Part 11 does not flame and does not cause a rise in temperature on either the centre (specimen) thermocouple or the furnace thermocouple;
 - (c) a material which is either totally inorganic or does not contain more than 1% by weight or volume, of organic material; or
 - (d) concrete bricks or blocks meeting BS EN 771-3.
- 1.8 A non-combustible material is under European classification –
- (a) a material classified as Class A1 in accordance with BS EN 13501-1 Fire classification of construction products and building elements – Part 1: Classification using test data from reaction to fire tests, when tested to –
 - (i) BS EN ISO 1182 *Reaction to fire tests for building products – Non-combustibility test*; and
 - (ii) BS EN ISO 1716 *Reaction to fire tests for building products – Determination of the heat of combustion*; or
 - (b) a product made from one or more of the materials considered as Class A1 without the need for testing, as defined in Commission Decision 96/603/EC of 4th October 1996 establishing the list of products belonging to class A1 'No contribution to fire' provided for in the Decision 94/611/EC implementing Article 20 of the Council Directive 89/106/EEC on construction products. None of the materials should contain more than 1.0% by weight or volume (whichever is lower) of homogeneously distributed organic material.

Materials of limited combustibility

- 1.9 A material of limited combustibility is under National classification –
- (a) a material which can be classified as non-combustible under paragraphs 1.7(a) to (d);
 - (b) a material with a non-combustible core not less than 8 mm thick having combustible facings (on one or both sides) not more than 0.5 mm thick;
 - (c) a material of density not less than 300 kg/m³ which, when tested in accordance with BS 476: Part 11, does not flame or increase the temperature on the furnace thermocouple by more than 20°C; or
 - (d) in the case of insulation referred to in Table 4.3 and paragraph 5.4 - a material of density less than 300 kg/m³ which, when tested in accordance with BS 476: Part 11 does not flame for more than 10 seconds and the rise in temperature is not more than 35°C on the centre (specimen) thermocouple and not more than 25°C on the furnace thermocouple.
- 1.10 A material of limited combustibility is under European classification –
- (a) any material or product classified as non-combustible under paragraph 1.8(a) or (b); or
 - (b) a material or product classified as Class A2-s3,d2 or higher in accordance with BS EN 13501-1 *Fire classification of construction products and building elements – Part 1: Classification using test data from reaction to fire tests when tested to –*
 - (i) BS EN ISO 1182 *Reaction to fire tests for building products – Non-combustibility test*; or
 - (ii) BS EN ISO 1716 *Reaction to fire tests for building products – Determination of the heat of combustion*, and BS EN 13823 *Reaction to fire tests for building products – Building products excluding floorings exposed to the thermal attack by a single burning item*,
- where a classification includes 's3,d2' this means that there is no limit set for smoke production and/or flaming droplets/particles.

Classification

- 1.11 National classifications do not automatically equate with the equivalent European classifications therefore products cannot typically assume a European class unless they have been tested accordingly.

Performance of materials, products and structures

- 1.11 A Much of the guidance in this document is given in terms of performance classifications in relation to British or European Standards. In such cases, it will be necessary to demonstrate that a system or product can meet the relevant performance classification. This will be achieved if the system or product –
- (a) is in accordance with a specification or design that has been shown by specific test(s) to be capable of meeting that performance classification;
 - (b) has been assessed from relevant test evidence, in lieu of a specific test(s), as being capable of meeting that performance classification; or
 - (c) has been designed by using relevant design standards that are capable of meeting that performance classification.

Note: Some products are subject to Classification Without Further Testing (CWFT). For the purposes of this technical booklet, such products can be considered to have been shown to be capable of meeting a performance specification as per paragraph 1.11A(a).

- 1.11B Any test evidence used to demonstrate the fire performance classification of a product or system should be carefully checked to ensure that it is applicable to the intended use. Small differences in detail, such as fixing method, joints, dimensions, the introduction of insulation materials and air gaps (ventilated or not), can significantly affect the performance.
- 1.11C They should only be carried out where sufficient relevant test evidence is available. Relevant test evidence is unlikely to be provided by test standards which have different classification criteria.
- 1.11D Where it is proposed to assess the classification of a product or system in lieu of carrying out a specific test (as in paragraph 1.11A(b)), this should be done in accordance with the relevant standard for extended application for the test in question and should include details of the test evidence that has been used to support the assessment.

For performance classifications where there is no specific standard for extended application, assessment reports should be produced in accordance with the principles of BS EN 15725 and should include details of the test evidence that has been used to support the assessment. Further information on best practice is provided in the Passive Fire Protection Federation's Guide to undertaking assessments in lieu of fire tests.

Note: Regulation 23(2) limits components used in or on the external walls of certain buildings to materials achieving European classification Class A2-s1, d0 or Class A1 (see Section 5). Assessments cannot be used to demonstrate compliance with this requirement.

- 1.11 E Tests and assessments should be carried out by organisations with the necessary expertise. For example, organisations listed as “notified bodies” in accordance with the European Construction Products Regulation or laboratories accredited by UKAS for the relevant test standard can be assumed to have the necessary expertise.

Note: Standard fire tests do not directly measure fire hazard. They measure or assess the response of a material or system to exposure to one or more aspects of fire conditions. Performance in fire tests is only one of a number of factors that should be taken into account.

Alternative approaches

Risk-based design using BS 9999

- 1.12 BS 9999 *Code of practice for fire safety in the design, management and use of buildings* gives flexibility to fire safety design through the use of a structured approach to risk-based design, where designers can take account of varying physical and human factors. Within its scope, this document may be used as an alternative approach to following the relevant methods and standards set out in this booklet.

Where designers elect to use BS 9999 in this manner they will need to demonstrate that the relevant requirements of Part E have been met.

Fire safety engineering

- 1.13 A fire safety engineering approach which takes into account the total fire safety package within a building may provide an adequate level of fire safety. Indeed, it may be the only viable approach to the achievement of a satisfactory standard in some large and complex buildings but it is beyond the scope of this Technical Booklet. Fire safety engineering may also be suitable for solving a problem with an aspect of the building design which otherwise follows the provisions in this booklet.

BS 7974 *Fire safety engineering in buildings* and supporting published documents provide a framework and guidance on the design and assessment of fire safety measures in buildings. Following the discipline of BS 7974 should enable designers and building control officers to be aware of the relevant issues, the need to consider the complete fire safety system and to follow a disciplined analytical framework.

Where designers elect to use a fire engineered approach they will need to demonstrate that the relevant requirements of Part E have been met.

- 2.1 The provisions in this Section have been formulated using assumptions regarding the likely source and growth of a fire and are based on recognised criteria for means of escape. These assumptions and criteria are outlined in paragraph 0.18.

The provisions are divided into –

- (a) those applying to dwellinghouses – paragraphs 2.2 to 2.33;
- (b) those applying to flats – paragraphs 2.34 to 2.36;
- (c) those applying to all types of buildings other than dwellings –
 - (i) the horizontal part of the escape route – paragraphs 2.40 to 2.59; and
 - (ii) the vertical part of the escape route – paragraphs 2.60 to 2.83; and
- (d) general provisions applying to dwellinghouses and all other types of buildings except flats – paragraphs 2.84 to 2.103.

Dwellinghouses

Introduction

- 2.2 The provisions for means of escape in typical one and two storey dwellinghouses (i.e. those with no storey more than 4.5 m above ground level) are limited to the common provisions given in paragraphs 2.4 to 2.11.

With increasing height, provisions additional to the common provisions are necessary, as stairs may become impassable before evacuation is complete and the use of emergency egress windows becomes increasingly hazardous. The additional provisions are given in paragraphs 2.12 to 2.16.

Where an external escape route is provided the provisions contained in paragraphs 2.58, 2.59 and 2.76 should also apply.

- 2.3 The provisions for automatic fire detection and warning are given in paragraphs 2.23 to 2.33. The installation of smoke and heat alarms or automatic fire detection and alarm systems can significantly increase the level of safety by automatically giving early warning of fire.

Common provisions

- 2.4 Every storey (including a basement storey) in a dwellinghouse which does not have alternative escape routes leading to their own exits should have an emergency egress window for escape or rescue purposes.

An emergency egress window that serves a storey should –

- (a) where the storey is an upper storey – be located to facilitate rescue by ladder from the ground;

- (b) where it is a dormer or roof window – be positioned as shown on Diagram 2.1;
- (c) be located remote from the escape route; and
- (d) comply with paragraph 2.9.

Where a basement storey contains a habitable room and does not have alternative escape routes it should be served by a protected stairway that extends to a final exit.

- 25 Every habitable room, on an upper storey not more than 4.5 m above ground level that does not have alternative escape routes, should have an emergency egress window complying with paragraph 2.9 for escape purposes.

However, an emergency egress window may serve two such habitable rooms provided that –

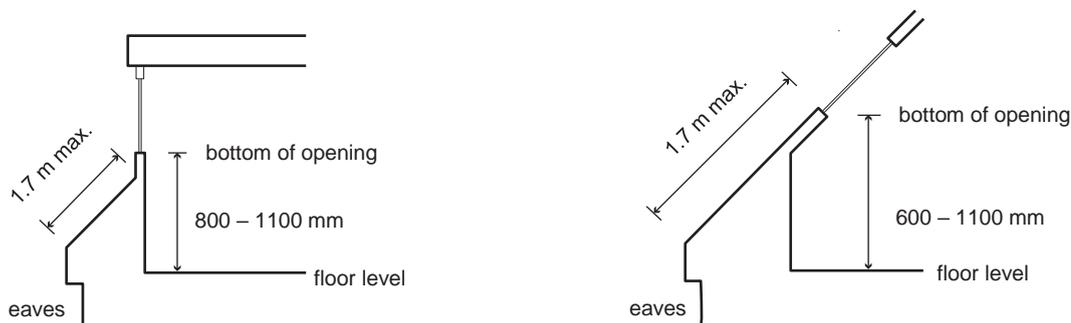
- (a) both rooms have their own access to the stairway enclosure; and
- (b) it is possible to gain access, via a communicating door between the rooms, to the window without passing through the stairway enclosure.

- 26 A habitable room should open directly onto a hallway (including a corridor or landing leading to the hallway) which leads to the entrance without passing through any room (except a porch), other than where the habitable room –

- (a) has an alternative escape route;
- (b) is on a storey not more than 4.5 m above ground level and the habitable room has an emergency egress window complying with paragraph 2.9; or
- (c) is part of a roof space conversion which complies with paragraphs 2.17 to 2.22.

Diagram 2.1 Emergency egress windows from roof space conversions of 2storey dwellinghouses

see para 2.4 and 2.22(b)



(a) Dormer window

(b) Roof window (rooflight)

Notes :

- (1) Clear window opening not less than 0.33 m² in area and at least 450 mm high and at least 450 mm wide.
- (2) Window located to facilitate rescue by ladder from the ground.
- (3) The window may be in the end wall of the dwellinghouse instead of the roof as shown.

Access rooms to inner rooms

- 27 A habitable room may be an access room to any inner room. A kitchen should not be an access room to an inner room other than –
- (a) to a utility room or conservatory which has an emergency egress window complying with paragraph 2.9; or
 - (b) where the kitchen and the inner room are on the same storey and the kitchen is part of an alternative escape route leading to its own final exit. See Diagram 2.2.
- 28 Where a habitable room, by virtue of a stairway discharging into it, is an access room to a habitable room on the storey above –
- (a) the upper storey should be not more than 4.5 m above ground level; and
 - (b) the foot of the stairway should be not more than 3 m from –
 - (i) a final exit; or
 - (ii) a door opening directly into a hallway (including a corridor leading to the hallway).

Emergency egress windows

- 29 An emergency egress window should –
- (a) have a clear opening that is not less than 0.33 m² in area; and
 - (b) have a clear opening that is at least 450 mm high and at least 450 mm wide.

The lower edge of the window opening should be not less than 800 mm and not more than 1100 mm above the floor except in the case of a roof window where the lower edge of the window opening may be not less than 600 mm above the floor. For the purposes of this paragraph an emergency egress window should be taken to include a door which leads to an area (e.g. a balcony) from which a person could escape or be rescued. The minimum height to the lower edge of the opening should not apply to such a door.

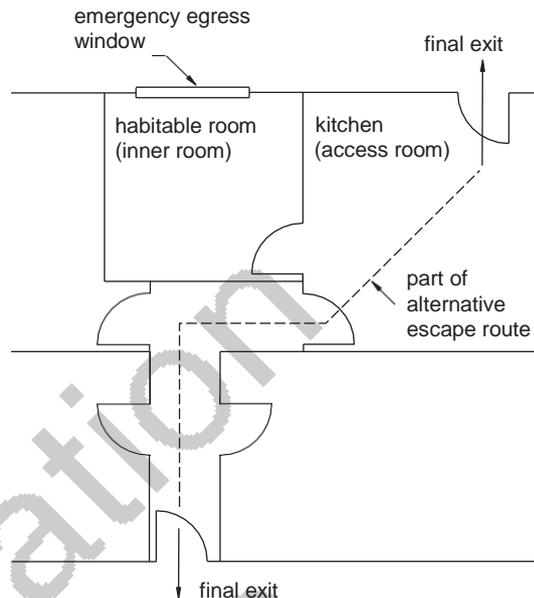
- 2.10 An emergency egress window should lead to a place that is free from the danger of fire and not lead to an enclosed yard or garden unless it has an area of relative safety which is not less than the height of the dwellinghouse from the dwellinghouse. An enclosed yard or garden is one from which there is no exit under the control of the occupants of the dwellinghouse.

Sleeping galleries

- 2.11 Where a gallery for sleeping purposes is provided –
- (a) the gallery should be not more than 4.5 m above ground level;
 - (b) the distance between the foot of the access stair to the gallery and the door to the room containing the gallery should be not more than 3 m;
 - (c) the floor area of the gallery should be not more than 30 m²;
 - (d) an alternative escape route, or an emergency egress window which complies with paragraph 2.9 located remote from the access stair, should be provided where the distance from the head of the access stair to any point on the gallery is more than 7.5 m; and

Diagram 2.2 Kitchen as access room

see para 2.7(b)



Note:
storey not more than 4.5 m above ground level

- (e) any cooking facilities within the room containing the gallery should either –
- (i) be enclosed with fire-resisting construction; or
 - (ii) be remote from the stair to the gallery and be positioned so that they do not prejudice the means of escape from the gallery.

Provisions additional to the common provisions for a dwellinghouse with one storey more than 4.5 m above ground level

2.12 In a dwellinghouse with only one storey more than 4.5 m above ground level –

- (a) the top storey should –
 - (i) be separated from the lower storeys by fire-resisting construction; and
 - (ii) have an alternative escape route leading to its own final exit; or
- (b) all storeys above the storey containing the final exit should be served by a protected stairway which either –
 - (i) extends to a final exit as shown in Diagram 2.3(a); or
 - (ii) leads to at least two escape routes at ground level, each leading to a final exit and separated from each other by fire-resisting construction and self-closing fire doors as shown in Diagram 2.3(b).

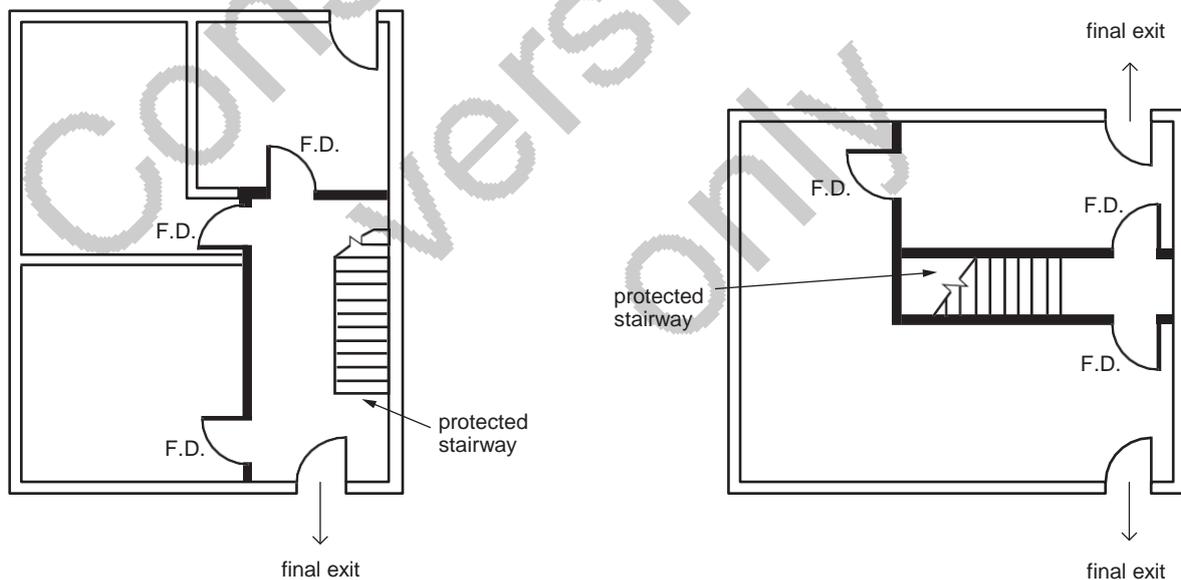
- 2.13 Where the storey which is more than 4.5 m above ground level is created by the conversion of the roof space of a two storey dwellinghouse the provisions of paragraphs 2.17 to 2.22 may be applied as an alternative to the provisions of paragraph 2.12.

Provisions additional to the common provisions for a dwellinghouse with two or more storeys more than 4.5 m above ground level

- 2.14 In a dwellinghouse with two or more storeys more than 4.5 m above ground level –
- (a) all storeys above the storey containing the final exit should be served by a protected stairway which complies with paragraph 2.12(b); and
 - (b) each storey that is over 7.5 m above ground level should have an alternative escape route leading to its own final exit. Where access to an alternative escape route is through the protected stairway, the protected stairway should be subdivided by fire-resisting construction at or about 7.5 m above ground level.

Diagram 2.3 Alternative arrangements for final exits

see para 2.12(b) and 2.18(a) & (b)



(a) Protected stairway delivering directly to the final exit

(b) Protected stairway affording access to two independent escape routes

Key

- F.D. fire-resisting door
- fire-resisting construction

Ducted air circulation systems

- 2.15 In a dwellinghouse with a storey more than 4.5 m above ground level, any system of ducted air circulation should –
- (a) not be fitted with transfer grilles between any room and a protected stairway;
 - (b) not have supply and return grilles more than 450 mm above floor level;
 - (c) where air is ducted to a protected stairway – have the return air ducted back to the heater;
 - (d) where a duct passes through the enclosure to a protected stairway – have the joints between the duct and the enclosure fire-stopped; and
 - (e) where warm air heating is ducted – have a thermal cut out with maximum setting of 27°C, which turns off the heater and any circulation fan if the ambient temperature exceeds that setting.

Passenger lifts

- 2.16 Where a passenger lift is provided and serves a storey more than 4.5 m above ground level it should either –
- (a) be located in the enclosure of a protected stairway; or
 - (b) be contained in a fire-resisting lift shaft.

Roof space conversions

- 2.17 Where a roof space is to be converted to habitable accommodation, automatic fire detection and fire alarm in accordance with paragraph 2.23 and 2.24 should be provided and either –
- (a) the relevant provisions of paragraphs 2.4 to 2.15 should apply; or
 - (b) where the existing dwellinghouse has two storeys the provisions in paragraphs 2.18 to 2.22 may be followed provided that the new storey does not –
 - (i) exceed 50 m² in floor area; or
 - (ii) contain more than two habitable rooms.

Note – The general provisions of this Section apply to any other roof space conversion which adds a new storey to an existing dwellinghouse.

Enclosure of existing stairway

- 2.18 The existing stairway should be enclosed by fire-resisting walls and either –
- (a) extend to a final exit as shown in Diagram 2.3(a); or
 - (b) lead to at least two escape routes at ground level, each delivering to a final exit and separated from each other by fire-resisting construction and self-closing fire doors as shown in Diagram 2.3(b).

2.19 Any glazing (whether new or existing) in the enclosure of the existing stairway, other than to a bathroom or sanitary accommodation, should be fire-resisting. (See Tables 2.8, 4.1 and 4.2.)

2.20 Other than where paragraph 2.18 requires a fire door, every doorway in the enclosure to the existing stairway should be fitted with an imperforate door. A door to a habitable room or a kitchen should be fitted with a self-closing device.

Where a new door is to be provided to an existing habitable room or kitchen it should be a fire door.

Fire separation of new storey

2.21 The new storey should be separated from the rest of the dwellinghouse by fire-resisting construction. The new stairway should either –

- (a) rise as a continuation of the existing stairway and enclosure, in which case the stairway should be separated from the new accommodation by fire-resisting construction; or
- (b) be separated from the existing stairway and the rest of the dwellinghouse by fire-resisting construction.

Any door in new fire-resisting construction should be a self-closing fire door.

2.22 Each habitable room in the new storey should have –

- (a) an emergency egress window which complies with paragraph 2.9; or
- (b) an emergency egress dormer window or roof window, of the size given in paragraph 2.9 positioned as shown in Diagram 2.1,

that is located to facilitate rescue from the ground by ladder.

However, an emergency egress window may serve both habitable rooms provided that –

- (i) each room has its own access to the stairway enclosure; and
- (ii) it is possible to gain access, via a communicating door between the rooms, to the window without passing through the stairway enclosure.

Automatic fire detection and fire alarm systems in dwellinghouses

- 223 A dwellinghouse should be provided with either –
- (a) smoke alarms complying with BS 5446-1 and a heat alarm or alarms complying with BS 5446-2 installed in accordance with paragraphs 2.25 to 2.33; or
 - (b) an automatic fire detection and fire alarm system complying with BS 5839-6 of at least Grade D Category LD2 standard including a smoke alarm or alarms in the principal habitable room and a heat alarm or alarms in every kitchen.

Note – BS 5446-1 covers smoke alarms based on ionization chamber smoke detectors and optical smoke detectors. These different types of detector respond differently to smouldering and fast-flaming fires. Either type of detector is generally suitable. However, the choice of detector type should, if possible take into account the type of fire that might be expected and the need to avoid false alarms. Optical detectors tend to be less affected by low levels of 'invisible' particles, such as fumes from kitchens, that often cause false alarms. Accordingly, they are generally more suitable than ionization chamber detectors for installation in circulation spaces adjacent to kitchens.

- 224 Where any storey in a dwellinghouse is more than 200 m² in area the dwellinghouse should be provided with –
- (a) where the number of storeys is not more than 3 – an automatic fire detection and fire alarm system complying with BS 5839-6 of at least Grade B Category LD2 standard including a smoke detector or detectors in the principal habitable room and a heat detector or detectors in every kitchen; or
 - (b) where the number of storeys is more than 3 – an automatic fire detection and fire alarm system complying with BS 5839-6 of at least Grade A Category LD2 standard including a smoke detector or detectors in the principal habitable room and a heat detector or detectors in every kitchen.

Basement storeys should be counted in this provision.

Provision of smoke alarms and heat alarms

- 225 At least one smoke alarm should be provided –
- (a) in the circulation route or routes on each storey; and
 - (b) in the principal habitable room,

and at least one heat alarm should be provided in every kitchen. The smoke and heat alarms should be located to comply with the provisions of paragraphs 2.27 to 2.32.

Smoke alarms and heat alarms should be interconnected so that they all give an audible alarm when any one of them is activated.

The maximum number of smoke alarms and heat alarms which may be interconnected should not exceed that given in the manufacturer's instructions.

A back-up power source to each smoke alarm and heat alarm should be provided by either –

- (i) a primary or secondary battery; or
- (ii) a capacitor.

Installation of smoke alarms and heat alarms

2.26 Smoke alarms and heat alarms should be permanently wired to either –

- (a) a regularly used lighting circuit; or
- (b) a circuit which –
 - (i) is separately fused at the distribution board;
 - (ii) serves only smoke alarms and heat alarms; and
 - (iii) where a residual current device is used – is not connected to a residual current device which is also used by any other circuit.

Smoke alarms and heat alarms may operate at a low voltage via a mains transformer. The cable for the power supply to, and interconnection of, the smoke alarms need not have special fire-survival properties.

2.27 Smoke alarms should be located in the circulation route or routes of a dwellinghouse so that there is one –

- (a) not more than 3 m from every bedroom door;
- (b) not more than 7.5 m from every door to a living room or kitchen; and
- (c) where a circulation route on a storey is more than 15 m long – not more than 15 m from another smoke alarm on the same circulation route and storey.

2.28 Smoke alarms should be located in a principal habitable room so that no point in the room is more than 7.5 m from the nearest smoke alarm. Heat alarms should be located in a kitchen so that no point in the kitchen is more than 5.3 m from the nearest heat alarm.

2.29 A smoke alarm or heat alarm should be located so that it is –

- (a) either on a ceiling and not less than 300 mm from a wall or light fitting, or where designed for wall mounting on a wall and not less than 150 mm, or more than 300 mm from the ceiling and the sensitive element should not be below the level of a door opening;
- (b) not less than 300 mm from, and not directly above, a heater or an air conditioning ventilator;
- (c) on a surface which is normally at the ambient temperature for the space it bounds; and
- (d) easily and safely accessible.

2.30 Where a smoke alarm is mounted on a ceiling, it should be located so that its sensitive element is not less than 25 mm or more than 600 mm below the ceiling.

2.31 Where a heat alarm is mounted on a ceiling, it should be located so that its sensitive element is not less than 25 mm or more than 150 mm below the ceiling.

A heat alarm should not be located above a cooking appliance.

Note – The guidance given in this paragraph and paragraph 2.30 applies to ceilings that are predominately flat and horizontal.

2.32 A smoke alarm should not be located in a kitchen, garage or other place where steam, condensation or fumes could give false alarms.

2.33 Where dwellinghouses are part of a sheltered dwelling scheme with a warden or supervisor, the fire detection and fire alarm system within each dwellinghouse should be connected to the warden's or supervisor's central monitoring point so as to –

- (a) give an audible warning of the detection of smoke or heat in any dwellinghouse; and
- (b) enable the identification of the dwellinghouse involved.

Flats

Means of escape

2.34 The means of escape in a flat should be in accordance with the relevant recommendations of BS 5588-1.

Automatic fire detection and fire alarm systems in flats

2.35 Each individual flat should be provided with either –

- (a) smoke alarms complying with BS 5446-1 and a heat alarm or alarms complying with BS 5446-2 installed in accordance with paragraphs 2.25 to 2.32; or
- (b) an automatic fire detection and fire alarm system complying with BS 5839-6 of at least Grade D Category LD2 standard including a smoke alarm or alarms in the principal habitable room and a heat alarm or alarms in every kitchen.

2.36 Where any storey in a flat is more than 200 m² in area, the flat should be provided with an automatic fire detection and fire alarm system complying with BS 5839-6 of at least Grade B Category LD2 standard, including a smoke detector or detectors in the principal habitable room and a heat detector or detectors in every kitchen.

Buildings other than dwellings

- 2.37 In buildings other than dwellings the number of escape routes needed depends on the number of occupants (occupant capacity). In some cases a room or a storey is designed to accommodate a known number of people; in others the occupant capacity should be calculated by dividing the area of the room or storey (excluding stairways, lifts and sanitary accommodation) by the appropriate floor space factor given in Table 2.2. Where the occupant capacity is calculated for rooms the occupant capacity of a storey is the sum of the occupant capacities of the rooms on that storey. The occupant capacity of a building or part of a building is the sum of the occupant capacities of the storeys in that building or part.
- 2.38 In buildings other than dwellings a suitable fire detection and fire alarm system to BS 5839-1 should be installed. The factors which have to be considered when assessing what category of fire detection and fire alarm system is to be provided will vary from one set of premises to another. Therefore the appropriate category will need to be considered on a case by case basis. Automatic detection should be provided where required by the provisions in this Section and in Sections 4 and 6.
- Note – General guidance on the category of automatic fire detection that may need to be provided within a building can be found in Table A.1 of BS 5839-1.
- 2.39 Where a building contains areas in different purpose groups the means of escape from any area which is of Purpose Group 1(a), 2 or 5 should be independent of the means of escape from other areas of the building.

Horizontal part of the escape route

- 2.40 The provisions in paragraphs 2.41 to 2.59 relate to horizontal escape routes leading to storey exits. They are mainly concerned with providing more than one escape route (except in the circumstances described in paragraph 2.41), limiting the distance to be travelled, and ensuring that the routes are of adequate width.

Single escape routes

- 2.41 Alternative escape routes should be provided from all parts of the building other than in the following circumstances where a single route is permitted –
- areas from which a storey exit can be reached within the maximum travel distance in one direction only given in Table 2.3, provided that no room in this situation has an occupant capacity of more than 60 people, or 30 people if the building is an Institution [Purpose Group 2(a)]; and
 - a storey with an occupant capacity of no more than 60 people provided that a storey exit can be reached within the maximum travel distance in one direction only given in Table 2.3.

Travel distance

- 242 Whether there are alternative escape routes or only a single one, the travel distance to the nearest storey exit should not exceed the maximum relevant travel distance given in Table 2.3.

Note – It is only the distance to the nearest storey exit that should be so limited. The distance from the same point in the storey to any other storey exit may be longer.

Where the initial part of an escape route is in one direction only and leads to a point from which escape is possible in two directions (e.g. as shown in Diagram 2.4), the initial part should not exceed the maximum travel distance in one direction only, and the overall travel distance should not exceed the maximum travel distance in more than one direction.

Number of escape routes and exits

- 243 The number of escape routes and exits should be not less than the number given in Table 2.1 for the relevant occupant capacity of the room or storey as appropriate. The escape routes and exits should be arranged such that the travel distances given in Table 2.3 are not exceeded.

Table 2.1 Minimum number of escape routes and exits from a room or storey

Maximum occupant capacity	Minimum number of escape routes/exits
60	1 ⁽¹⁾
600	2
1000	3
2000	4
4000	5
7000	6
11000	7
16000	8
More than 16000	8 ⁽²⁾

Notes:

(1) See paragraph 2.41 for the circumstances in which single exits and escape routes are acceptable.

(2) Plus 1 per 5000 people (or part thereof) over 16000.

Table 2.2 Floor space factors

Item	Type of accommodation ⁽¹⁾⁽²⁾	Floor space factor m ² per person
1	Standing spectator areas	0.3
2	Amusement arcade, assembly hall (including a general purpose place of assembly), bar (including a lounge bar), bingo hall, dance floor or hall, club, crush hall, venue for pop concert and similar events, queuing area	0.5
3	Concourse (other than in a shopping complex) ⁽³⁾	0.75
4	Committee room, common room, conference room, dining room, licensed betting office (public area), lounge (other than a lounge bar), meeting room, reading room, restaurant, staff room, waiting room	1.0 ⁽⁴⁾
5	Exhibition hall	1.5
6	Shop sales area ⁽⁵⁾ , skating rink	2.0
7	Art gallery, dormitory, factory production area, office (open-plan exceeding 60 m ²), workshop	5.0
8	Kitchen, library, office (other than in item 7 above), shop sales area ⁽⁶⁾	7.0
9	Bedroom or study-bedroom	8.0
10	Bed-sitting room, billiards room	10.0
11	Storage and warehouse accommodation	30.0
12	Car park	Two people per parking space

Notes:

- (1) Where accommodation is not directly covered by the descriptions given, a reasonable value based on a similar use may be selected.
- (2) If there is to be mixed use, the most onerous factor should be applied.
- (3) Refer to Section 4 of BS 5588-10 for detailed guidance on the calculation of occupancy and means of escape in common areas in shopping complexes.
- (4) Alternatively, the occupant capacity may be taken as the number of fixed seats provided, if the occupants will normally be seated.
- (5) Shops, other than those included under item 8, including – supermarkets and department stores (all sales areas), shops for personal services such as hairdressing and shops for the delivery or collection of goods for cleaning, repair or other treatment or for members of the public themselves carrying out such cleaning, repair or other treatment.
- (6) Shops, excluding those in covered shopping complexes and department stores, trading predominantly in furniture, floor coverings, cycles, perambulators, large domestic appliances or other bulky goods, or trading on a wholesale self-selection basis (cash and carry).

Table 2.3 Limitations on travel distances

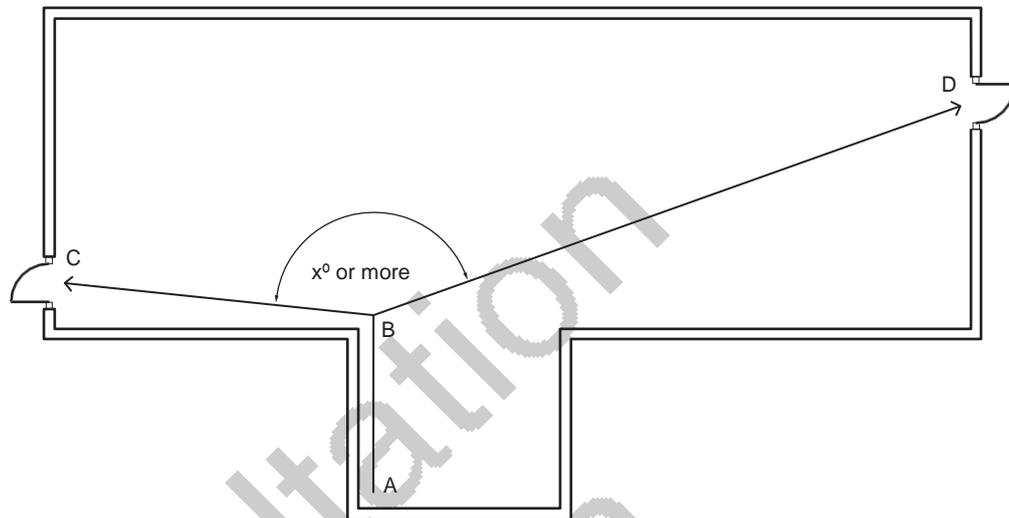
Purpose group	Use of the building or part of the building	Maximum travel distance ⁽¹⁾ where travel is possible in –	
		One direction only (m)	More than one direction (m)
2(a)	Institutional	9	18
2(b)	Other residential –		
	(a) in bedrooms	9 ⁽²⁾	18 ⁽²⁾
	(b) in bedroom corridors	9	35
	(c) elsewhere	18	35
3	Office	18 ⁽³⁾	45
4	Shop and commercial ⁽⁴⁾	18 ⁽³⁾	45
5	Assembly and recreation –		
	(a) buildings primarily for disabled people	9	18
	(b) schools	18	45
	(c) areas with seating in rows	15	32
	(d) elsewhere	18	45
6	Industrial ⁽⁵⁾	25	45
7	Storage and other non-residential ⁽⁵⁾	25	45
2, 3, 4, 5, 6 and 7	Place of special fire hazard ⁽⁶⁾	9 ⁽²⁾	18 ⁽²⁾
	Crèche	9	18
2, 3, 4, 5, 6 and 7	Plant room or rooftop plant –		
	(a) distance within the room	9	35
	(b) escape route not in open air (overall travel distance)	18	45
	(c) escape route in open air (overall travel distance)	60	100

Notes:

- (1) The dimensions in the Table are travel distances. If the internal layout of partitions, fittings, etc. is not known when plans are deposited, direct distances may be used for assessment. The direct distance should be taken as two-thirds of the travel distance.
- (2) Maximum part of travel distance within the room.
- (3) In the case of a small building described in paragraph 2.68 the maximum travel distance in one direction only may be –
 - (a) increased to 27 m in the ground storey; and
 - (b) measured to the foot of the unprotected stairway in the basement or to the head of the unprotected stairway in the first storey.
- (4) Maximum travel distances within shopping malls are given in BS 5588-10. Guidance on associated smoke control measures is given in BRE report *Design methodologies for smoke and heat exhaust ventilation* (BR 368). BS 5588-10 applies more restrictive provisions to shop units with only one exit in covered shopping complexes.
- (5) In industrial and storage buildings the appropriate travel distance depends on the level of fire risk associated with the processes and materials being used. The dimensions given above assume that the building will be of normal fire risk. If the building is high risk, then lesser distances of 12 m in one direction and 25 m in more than one direction, should apply.
- (6) Places of special fire hazard are listed in the definitions in paragraph 1.1.

Diagram 2.4 Travel distance in single direction leading to alternative escape routes

see para 2.42



Note:

If angle CBD is x° or more, alternative escape routes are available from B provided -

- (a) either AC or AD is less than or equal to the maximum travel distance in more than one direction; and
- (b) AB is less than or equal to the maximum travel distance in one direction only.

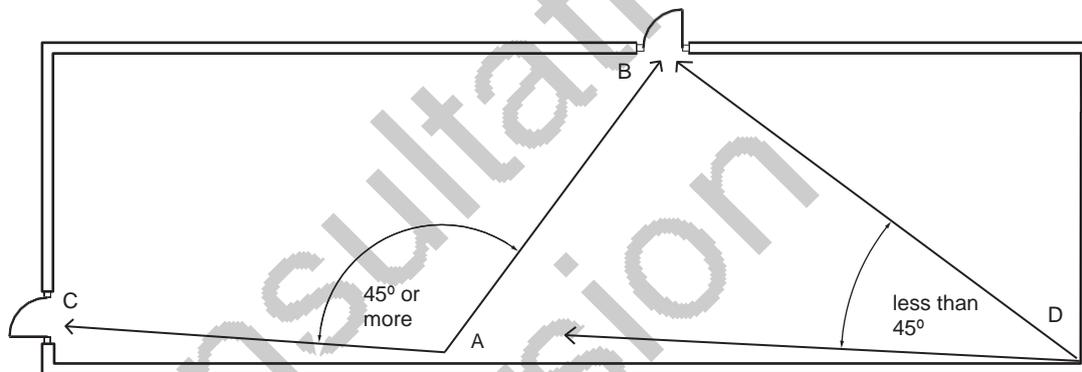
$x^\circ = 45^\circ$ plus 2.5° for each metre or part of a metre travelled from A to B.

Alternative escape routes

- 244 To prevent alternative escape routes being simultaneously unusable they should either –
- (a) be 45° or more apart (see Diagram 2.5); or
 - (b) if less than 45° apart be separated from each other by fire-resisting construction.

Diagram 2.5 Alternative escape routes

see para 2.44(a) and Diagram 2.4



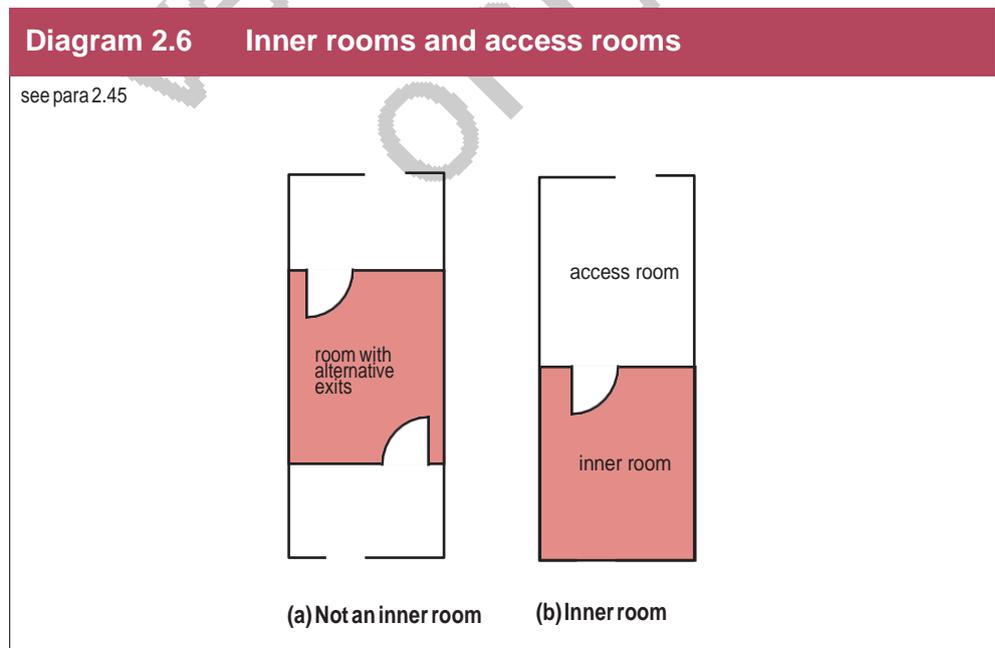
Note:

Acceptable alternative escape routes are available from A (so that either AB or AC is less than or equal to the maximum travel distance in more than one direction) but not from D (therefore see Diagram 2.4).

Inner rooms

- 2.45 An inner room is only permitted where –
- (a) the number of occupants of the inner room is not more than 60 people (or in the case of a building in Purpose Group 2(a), 30 people);
 - (b) it is not a bedroom;
 - (c) the escape route from the inner room does not pass through more than one access room;
 - (d) the distance from any point in the inner room to the nearest exit from the access room does not exceed the appropriate maximum travel distance in one direction only given in Table 2.3;
 - (e) the access room is not a place of special fire hazard and is in the control of the same occupier as the inner room; and
 - (f) one of the following applies –
 - (i) that part of the enclosure separating the inner and access room is stopped at least 500 mm below the ceiling;
 - (ii) a vision panel of not less than 0.1 m² is provided in the enclosure to the inner room so that a fire in the access room will be visible from the inner room at an early stage; or
 - (iii) the access room is fitted with a suitable automatic detection and alarm system to warn the occupants of the inner room of the outbreak of a fire in the access room.

See Diagram 2.6.



Crèches

- 246 Where a building has an ancillary use for child care the accommodation for children should be located in the ground storey adjacent to an external wall and should have not less than two exits, one of which should be a final exit.

However, where location on the ground storey is not possible it should be located as near ground level as possible provided that –

- (a) it is adjacent to an external wall and it has not less than two exits, one of which should be a storey exit;
- (b) it is not located above the level at which the parents or guardians are accommodated unless their escape route is through the upper level; and
- (c) it is not located on a basement storey unless it has an open side and a final exit at ground level.

Access to storey exits

- 247 In any storey which has more than one escape stairway the escape routes should be arranged so that people do not have to pass through one stairway to reach another. However, it is acceptable to pass through the protected lobby of one stairway to reach another escape stairway.

Open spatial planning

- 248 Escape routes should not be prejudiced by open connections between floors such as at an escalator.

An escape route should not be within 5 m of the open connection unless –

- (a) the direction of travel is away from the opening; or
- (b) there is an alternative escape route which does not pass within 5 m of the open connection.

See Diagram 2.7.

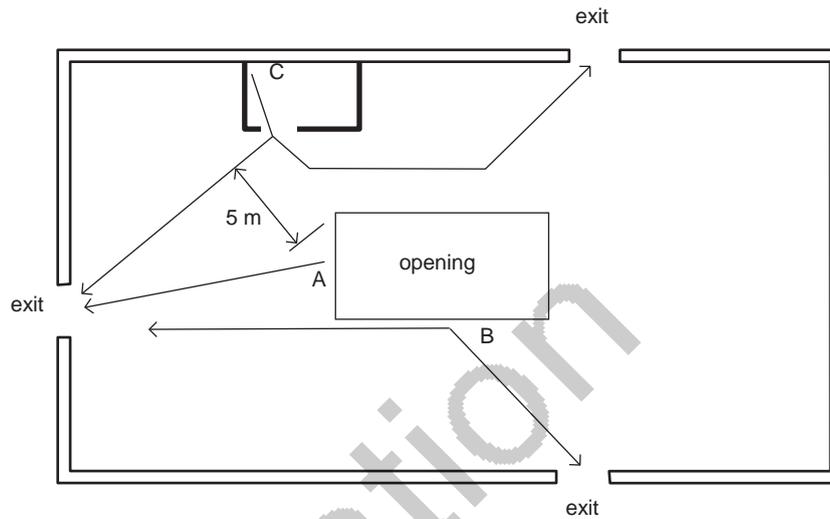
Planning of storey exits in a central core

- 249 A building with more than one storey exit in a central core should be planned so that the storey exits are remote from each other and not linked by a lift hall, lobby, or undivided corridor.

Where the central core is separated from the accommodation by a corridor, the corridor should be subdivided by self-closing fire doors (and any necessary associated screens) so that the storey exits are separated as in Diagram 2.8.

Diagram 2.7 Escape routes in relation to open connections between floors

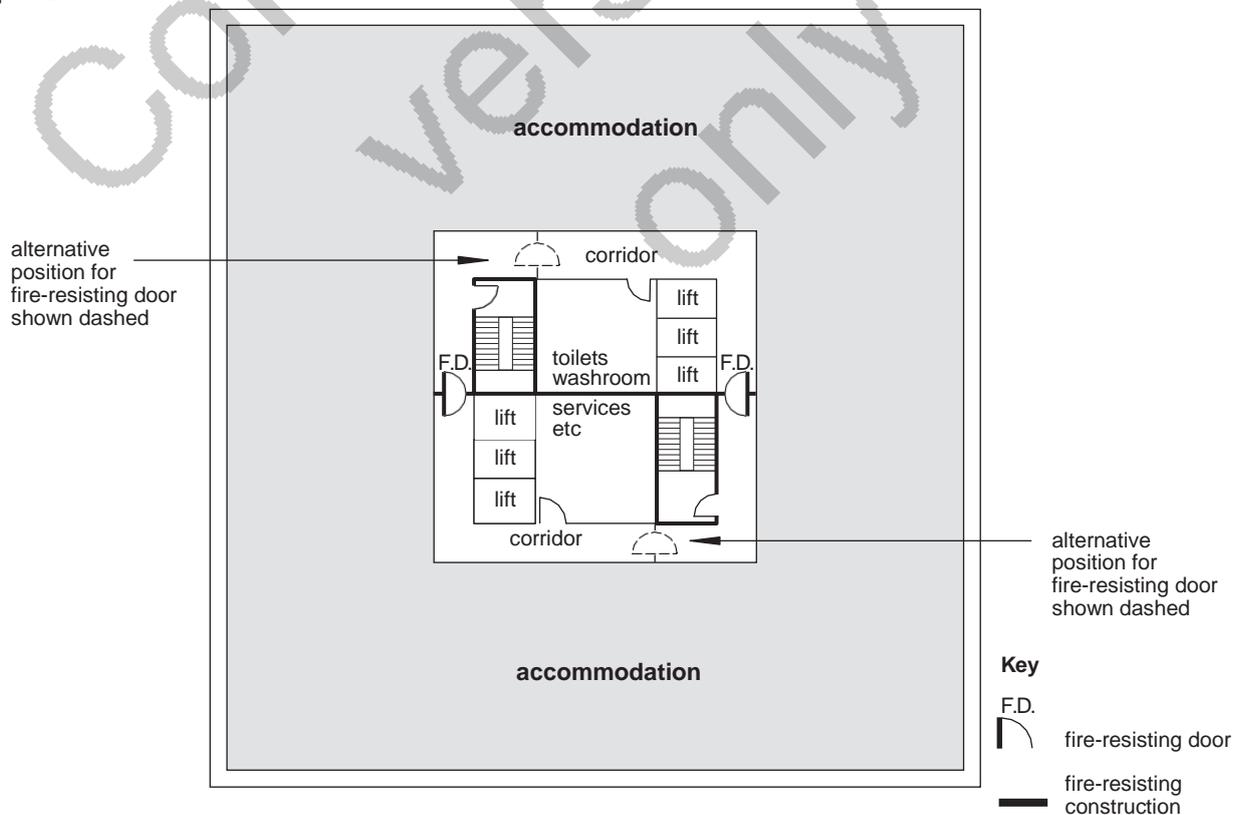
see para 2.48



Note:
 From A and B at least one direction of travel is away from the opening.
 From C where the initial direction of travel is towards the opening, one of the escape routes is not less than 5 m from the opening.

Diagram 2.8 Storey exits in a central core

see para 2.49



Storeys divided into different uses

- 2.50 Where a storey has an ancillary use for the consumption of food or drink by customers, the area given over to that use should –
- have not less than two escape routes; and
 - have escape routes that lead directly to a storey exit without entering a kitchen or place of special fire hazard.

Storeys divided into different occupancies

- 2.51 Where a storey is divided into two or more occupancies (i.e. ownerships, tenancies or similar) the means of escape from one occupancy should not pass through any other occupancy.

However, where the means of escape includes a corridor common to two or more occupancies then either it should be a protected corridor, or a fire detection and fire alarm system to BS 5839-1, of at least Category L3 standard, should be installed.

Width of escape routes and storey exits

- 2.52 The width of an escape route or storey exit should be not less than the minimum width given in Table 2.4, for the appropriate number of people assessed as being likely to use it. There should be no projections into escape routes other than handrails with a projection of less than 100 mm and stringers, skirtings and architraves of less than 30 mm, on either or both sides. (Note – for the purposes of Part H stair widths are measured between handrails.) The width of a storey exit should be measured in accordance with B1(g) of Appendix B.

Table 2.4 Widths of escape routes and storey exits

Maximum number of people ⁽¹⁾	Minimum width ⁽²⁾⁽³⁾ mm
50	750 ⁽⁴⁾
110	850
220	1100
More than 220	5 per person ⁽⁵⁾

Notes:

- (1) Assessed as being likely to use the escape route or storey exit.
- (2) In schools the minimum width of corridors in pupil areas should be 1050 mm where escape is in more than one direction and 1600 mm where escape is in one direction only.
- (3) Part R may require greater widths.
- (4) May be reduced to 530 mm for gangways between fixed storage racking, other than in public areas in Purpose Group 4 buildings.
- (5) 5 mm per person does not apply to an opening serving less than 220 persons.

Where there is a single escape route and storey exit their capacity should be not less than the number of occupants of the storey.

Where two or more escape routes and storey exits are provided it should be assumed that one of them may not be available due to fire or smoke. Therefore, each storey exit in turn should be discounted in order to ensure that the capacity of the remaining storey exits is adequate for the total number of people needing to use them. [This may have implications for the width of stairs because they should be not less than the width of any storey exit leading onto them – see paragraph 2.63(b)].

- 2.53 The total number of persons which two or more available storey exits (after discounting) can accommodate is found by adding the maximum number of persons determined for each storey exit width. For example in Table 2.4 three available exits each 850 mm wide will accommodate $110 \times 3 = 330$ persons (not the 510 persons accommodated by a combined exit width of 2550 mm).

Separation of circulation routes from escape stairways

- 2.54 A protected stairway should not form part of the primary circulation route between different parts of the building at the same level. However, it is acceptable for a protected lobby to form part of the primary circulation route.

Protected corridors

- 2.55 A corridor that is part of the means of escape should be a protected corridor where it is –
- (a) a corridor serving one or more bedrooms;
 - (b) a corridor from which escape is in one direction only (i.e. a dead end corridor); or
 - (c) common to two or more different occupancies other than where a fire detection and alarm system is installed in accordance with paragraph 2.51.

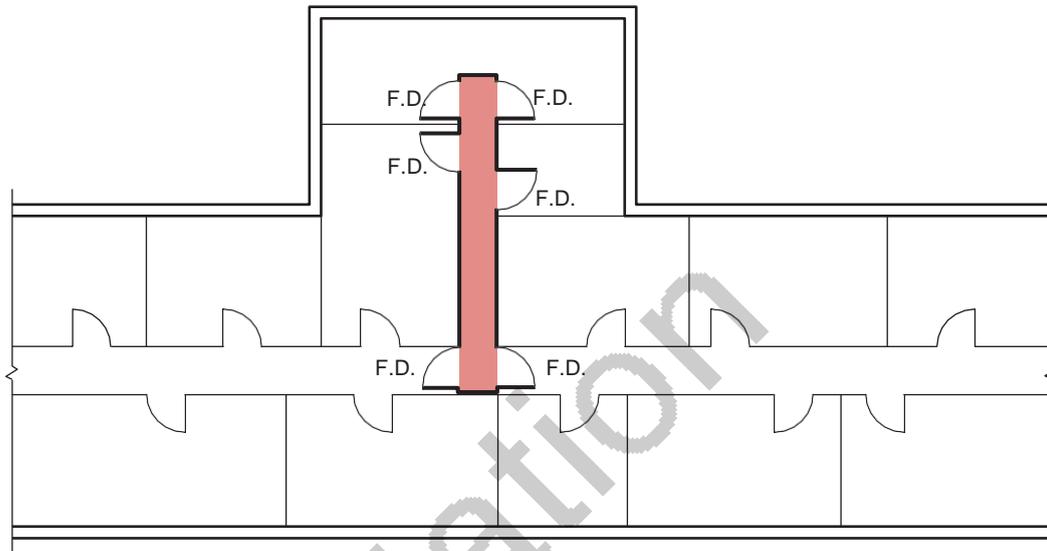
Subdivision of corridors

- 2.56 Where a corridor exceeding 12 m in length connects two or more storey exits, it should be subdivided by self-closing fire doors (and any necessary associated fire-resisting screens) approximately mid-way between the storey exits so that no undivided part is common to two or more storey exits. This is to reduce the likelihood of smoke making alternative routes impassible before all occupants have escaped. For corridors around a central core see paragraph 2.49.

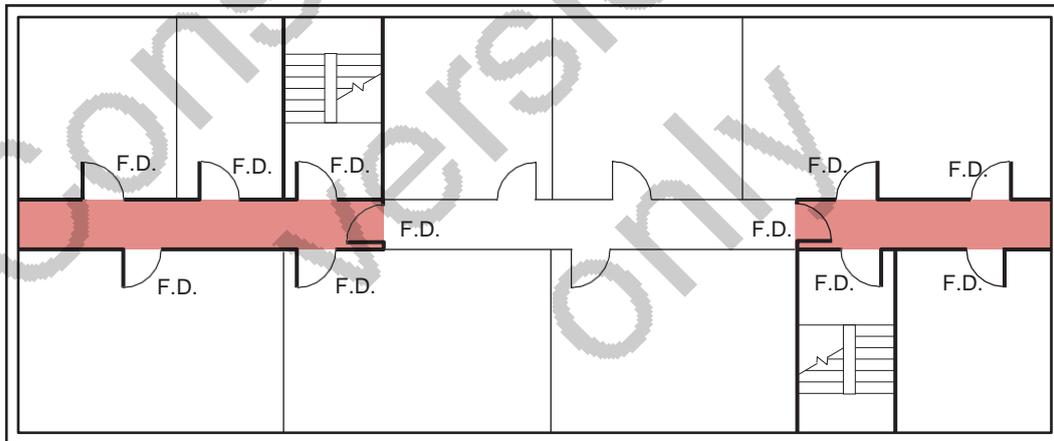
Where a dead end portion of a corridor exceeding 4.5 m in length leads to a point where alternative escape routes are available, the dead end portion should be extended and separated by self-closing fire doors (and any necessary associated fire-resisting screens) from the remainder of the corridor as shown in Diagram 2.9. However, where the stairways and corridors are protected by a pressurization system complying with BS EN 12101-6, such separation is not necessary.

Diagram 2.9 Dead end corridors

see para 2.56



(a) T-junction with main corridor



(b) Continuation past stairway

Key

-  F.D. fire-resisting door
-  fire-resisting construction
-  protected corridor

Enclosure of corridors that are not protected corridors

- 2.57 Where a corridor which is part of an escape route, but is not a protected corridor, is enclosed by partitions, those partitions provide some defence against the spread of smoke in the early stages of a fire and should be carried up to the underside of the structural floor or to a suspended ceiling. In the latter case cavity barriers should be provided in accordance with paragraph 4.35. Every opening into a room should be fitted with a door which need not be a fire door.

External escape routes

- 2.58 Where an external escape route, other than a stair, is beside an external wall of the building, that part of the external wall within 1.8 m (measured horizontally) of the escape route should be of fire-resisting construction 1.1 m above and 9 m below the level of the route as shown in Diagram 2.11 (see page 61).

Escape over flat roofs

- 2.59 Where more than one escape route is available from a storey, (or part of a building where appropriate) one of those routes may be by way of a flat roof, provided that –
- (a) the route does not serve –
 - (i) a building of Purpose Group 2(a); or
 - (ii) in a building of any other purpose group – an area intended for use by members of the public;
 - (b) the flat roof is part of the same building from which escape is being made;
 - (c) the route across the flat roof leads to a storey exit or external escape route;
 - (d) the part of the flat roof forming the escape route and its supporting structure, together with any opening in the roof within 3 m of the escape route, is fire-resisting; and
 - (e) the route is defined and guarded by walls and/or protective barriers which comply with Part H.

Vertical part of the escape route

- 2.60 The provisions in paragraphs 2.61 to 2.76 relate to the vertical escape down or up escape stairways towards a final exit. They are mainly concerned with providing a sufficient number of escape stairs of adequate aggregate width and their protection.

Number of escape stairways

- 2.61 The number of escape stairways in a building, or part of a building is determined by the provisions in –
- paragraph 2.39 regarding independent escape routes from areas in certain uses;
 - paragraphs 2.41 and 2.43 regarding the design of the horizontal part of the escape route;
 - paragraphs 2.63 and 2.64 regarding the width of stairs and the discounting of a stairway respectively; and
 - Section 6 regarding the provision and location of firefighting stairways.

Single escape stairways

- 2.62 Where independent escape routes are not required from areas in different purpose groups, in accordance with paragraph 2.39, a single escape stairway may serve –
- a basement which is permitted to have a single escape route in accordance with paragraph 2.41; or
 - a building which has no storey with a floor level more than 11 m above ground level, and in which every storey is permitted to have a single escape route in accordance with paragraph 2.41.

Width of escape stairs

- 2.63 An escape stair should be wide enough to accommodate the appropriate number of people assessed as being likely to use it.

This width depends on the number of stairways provided and whether the escape strategy is based on simultaneous evacuation (see paragraph 2.65) or phased evacuation (see paragraph 2.66).

In any event an escape stair should –

- be not less than the appropriate dimension given in Table 2.5;
- be not less than the width required for any storey exit giving access to it;
- not reduce in width at any point on its way to the final exit; and
- not exceed 1400 mm if the vertical extent of the escape stair is more than 30 m, unless it is at least 1800 mm and it is provided with a central handrail. In such a case the width on each side of the handrail should be considered separately for the purpose of assessing stair capacity. (Research indicates that people prefer to stay within reach of a handrail when making a prolonged descent, consequently the centre part of a wide stair is little used and could be hazardous).

Table 2.5 Minimum width of escape stairs

Situation of stair		Maximum number of people served ⁽¹⁾	Minimum stair width (mm)
1	In a Purpose Group 2(a) building (unless it will only be used by staff)	150	1000
2	In a Purpose Group 5 building and serving an area used for assembly purposes (unless the area is less than 100 m ²)	220	1100
3	In a building of any other purpose group and serving an area with an occupancy of more than 50	Over 220	Note ⁽²⁾
4	Any stair not described above	50	800

Notes:
(1) Assessed as likely to use the stair in a fire emergency.
(2) See Table 2.6 for sizing stairs for simultaneous evacuation and Table 2.7 for phased evacuation.

Discounting of escape stairways

2.64 Whether simultaneous or phased evacuation is used, where two or more escape stairways are provided it should be assumed that one of them may not be available due to fire or smoke. Therefore, each stairway in turn should be discounted in order to ensure that the capacity of the remaining stairways is adequate for the total number of people needing to use them.

This discounting provision need not be applied where –

- (a) the escape stairways are approached on each storey (except the topmost storey), through a protected lobby; or
- (b) the escape stairways are protected by pressurization systems designed in accordance with BS EN 12101-6,

however, discounting storey exits still needs to be considered (see paragraph 2.52).

Simultaneous evacuation

2.65 In a building or part of a building designed for simultaneous evacuation the escape stairways should have the capacity to allow all floors to be evacuated simultaneously and a suitable fire detection and fire alarm system to BS 5839-1, should be installed.

Simultaneous evacuation should be used for –

- (a) a basement;
- (b) a building containing open spatial planning;
- (c) a building of Purpose Group 2; and
- (d) a building of Purpose Group 5.

Where simultaneous evacuation is to be used the capacity of an escape stairway should be either –

- (i) in a building of not more than 10 storeys and for basements – that given for the appropriate width of escape stairs in Table 2.6; or
- (ii) in a building of more than 10 storeys – that derived from the formula –

$P = 200w + 50(w - 0.3)(n - 1)$ for stairs not less than 1100 mm wide, where

P = the number of people that can be accommodated;

w = the width of the escape stair (in metres); and

n = the number of storeys served by the stair.

Table 2.6 Capacity of escape stairways for simultaneous evacuation

Number of floors served	Maximum number of people accommodated on one stair of width								
	1000 mm	1100 mm	1200 mm	1300 mm	1400 mm	1500 mm	1600 mm	1700 mm	1800 mm
1	150	220	240	260	280	300	320	340	360
2	190	260	285	310	335	360	385	410	435
3	230	300	330	360	390	420	450	480	510
4	270	340	375	410	445	480	515	550	585
5	310	380	420	460	500	540	580	620	660
6	350	420	465	510	555	600	645	690	735
7	390	460	510	560	610	660	710	760	810
8	430	500	555	610	665	720	775	830	885
9	470	540	600	660	720	780	840	900	960
10	510	580	645	710	775	840	905	970	1035

Worked examples

A building comprises 12 storeys of offices (ground + 11). What is the minimum width needed for the stairs serving the office floors with a population of 1200 people (excluding the ground floor population which does not use the stairs), using simultaneous evacuation? Two stairs satisfy the travel distance limitations.

- (a) The population is distributed evenly.

As the top office storey is at a height greater than 18 m, both stairs need added protection (see paragraph 2.69). Therefore, if both stairs are entered at each level via a protected lobby, then both stairs can be assumed to be available (see paragraph 2.64).

$$P = 1200/2 = 600, n = 11$$

From the formula –

$$600 = 200w + 50(w - 0.3)(11 - 1)$$

$$600 = 200w + (50w - 15)(10)$$

$$600 = 200w + 500w - 150$$

$$750 = 700w$$

$$w = 1.07 \text{ m (1070 mm)}$$

Therefore, both stairs should be at least 1070 mm wide. But this needs to be increased to 1100 mm as the formula applies to stairs 1100 mm or wider (see paragraph 2.65).

This width should also be adequate to comply with paragraph 2.63 when one storey exit is discounted in accordance with paragraph 2.52 (i.e. the stair widths are not less than the minimum widths needed for 109 people in Table 2.4).

- (b) The population is not distributed evenly (e.g. 1000 people occupy floors 1 to 9, and 200 occupy floors 10 to 11).

As the top office storey is at a height greater than 18 m, both stairs need added protection (see paragraph 2.69). If both stairs are entered at each level via a protected lobby, then both stairs can be assumed to be available (see paragraph 2.64).

- (i) To find the width of the stairs serving floors 10 to 11 –

$$P = 200/2 = 100, n = 2$$

From the formula –

$$100 = 200w + 50(w - 0.3)(2 - 1)$$

$$100 = 200w + (50w - 15)(1)$$

$$100 = 200w + 50w - 15$$

$$115 = 250w$$

$$w = 0.46 \text{ m (460 mm)}$$

Therefore, both stairs between the 9th floor landing and the top floor should be at least 460 mm. But this needs to be increased to 1100 mm as the formula applies to stairs 1100 mm or wider (see paragraph 2.65).

This width should also be adequate to comply with paragraph 2.63 when one storey exit is discounted in accordance with paragraph 2.52 (i.e. the stair widths are not less than the minimum widths needed for 100 people in Table 2.4).

(ii) To find the width of the stairs serving floors 1 to 9 –

$$P = 1200/2 = 600, n = 9$$

From the formula:

$$600 = 200w + 50(w - 0.3)(9 - 1)$$

$$600 = 200w + (50w - 15)(8)$$

$$600 = 200w + 400w - 120$$

$$720 = 600w$$

$$w = 1.20 \text{ m (1200 mm)}$$

Therefore, both stairs between the 9th floor landing and the ground floor should be at least 1200 mm wide.

This width should also be adequate to comply with paragraph 2.63 when one storey exit is discounted in accordance with paragraph 2.52 (i.e. the stair widths are not less than the minimum widths needed for 111 people in Table 2.4).

Phased evacuation

2.66

In certain buildings it may be advantageous to design the escape stairways on the concept of phased evacuation. With phased evacuation the first people to be evacuated are those on the floor of the fire and the floor above together with those in the building who have reduced mobility.

Subsequently, if there is a need to evacuate more people, it should be done two floors at a time.

In such a building, or part of a building –

- (a) every escape stairway should be approached through a protected lobby or protected corridor at each storey, other than at a top storey consisting exclusively of plant rooms;
- (b) a protected lobby at each storey should be provided to the approach to every lift that is not within the enclosure of a protected stairway other than at a top storey consisting exclusively of plant rooms;
- (c) every floor should be a compartment floor;
- (d) an automatic sprinkler system complying with the relevant recommendations of BS 5306-2 or BS EN 12845, should be installed throughout the building where the building has a storey more than 30 m above ground level;
- (e) an automatic fire detection and fire alarm system, to BS 5839-1, of at least Category L3 standard, should be installed;
- (f) a voice alarm system to BS 5839-8 should be installed throughout the building, or part of the building; and
- (g) an emergency voice communication system to BS 5839-9 should be installed with a master station at fire and rescue access level (see Section 6) and an outstation on every storey.

The minimum width of a stair for phased evacuation should be that given in Table 2.7 for the appropriate maximum number of people on the most heavily occupied storey.

Worked example

A building comprises 12 storeys of offices (ground + 11). What is the minimum width needed for the stairs serving the office floors with a population of 1200 people (excluding the ground floor population which does not use the stairs), using phased evacuation? Two stairs satisfy the travel distance limitations.

As the top office storey is at a height greater than 18 m, both stairs need added protection (see paragraph 2.69). Therefore if both stairs are entered at each level via a protected lobby, then both stairs can be assumed to be available (see paragraph 2.64).

The population is divided equally therefore –

The number of people per storey is $(1200/11) = 109$.

Each stair must be able to accommodate half the maximum number of people in each storey $(109/2) = 55$ people.

From Table 2.7 the width of 1 stair to accommodate 55 people is 1000 mm (maximum capacity 100 people).

Both stairs need to be not less than 1000 mm wide.

This width will also be adequate when one storey exit is discounted in accordance with paragraph 2.52 and the consequent need to comply with paragraph 2.63 (i.e. the stair widths are not less than the minimum widths needed for people in Table 2.4).

Table 2.7 Minimum width of escape stairs for phased evacuation

Maximum number of people in any storey ⁽¹⁾	Stair width ⁽²⁾ (mm)
100	1000
120	1100
130	1200
140	1300
150	1400
160	1500
170	1600
180	1700
190	1800

Notes:

(1) Where the number of people (P) on the most heavily occupied storey is more than 190, the minimum width of the escape stair (W mm) should be calculated from $W = (P \times 10) - 100$.

(2) Where the stair serves a storey more than 30 m above ground level the width should not exceed 1400 mm [see paragraph 2.63(d)].

Protection of escape stairways

2.67 An escape stairway requires protection in order that it may provide an area of relative safety during a fire evacuation. The provisions for protecting an internal escape stairway are given in paragraphs 2.69 to 2.73 and further provisions apply when an escape stairway penetrates a compartment floor (see paragraph 4.23) or is a firefighting stairway (see paragraphs 6.3 to 6.6).

An accommodation stairway may form part of an internal route to a storey exit or final exit provided that the travel distance complies with paragraph 2.42 and the number of people involved is low.

2.68 An unprotected stairway may be used as an escape stairway in a small building provided that –

- (a) the building is of Purpose Group 3 or 4 and is not used for bar or restaurant purposes;
- (b) the building is designed for single occupancy;
- (c) the building comprises not more than a basement, ground and first storey;
- (d) the floor area of any storey is not more than 90 m²;
- (e) the stair does not connect more than two storeys; and
- (f) the stair discharges not more than 3 m from a final exit.

Protected lobbies and protected corridors

2.69 A protected lobby or protected corridor should be provided to every escape stairway on every storey in a building other than the top storey where –

- (a) the escape stairway is the only escape stairway serving the building (or part of the building) and the building (or part of the building) has more than one storey above or more than one storey below the storey containing the final exit from the escape stairway;
- (b) the escape stairway serves a storey more than 18 m above ground level;
- (c) the building is designed for phased evacuation and the top storey consists exclusively of plant rooms; or
- (d) the discounting stairway provisions have not been used in calculating escape stair widths as permitted by paragraph 2.64.

A protected lobby should also be provided between an escape stairway and a place of special fire hazard, and that lobby should have either not less than 0.4 m² of permanent ventilation or be protected from the ingress of smoke by a mechanical smoke control system.

Exits from protected stairways

- 2.70 Every protected stairway should discharge either –
- (a) directly to a final exit; or
 - (b) to a protected exit passageway leading only to a final exit. Where the stairway is lobbied, any door openings in the walls enclosing the protected exit passageway should be similarly lobbied.

Where the escape route from an escape stairway also forms the escape route from the ground and/or basement storey its width should be increased accordingly.

Separation of adjoining protected stairways and protected exit passageways

- 2.71 Where two or more protected stairways or protected exit passageways adjoin they should be separated by an imperforate enclosure.

Use of space within protected stairways

- 2.72 A protected stairway, other than a firefighting stairway (see Section 6), should not contain any accommodation or services other than –
- (a) sanitary accommodation or wash rooms provided that they are not used as a cloakroom;
 - (b) a lift, provided that in a building (or part of a building) with a single escape stairway the lift motor room is over the lift shaft or outside the protected stairway; and
 - (c) where it is not the only protected stairway in a building (or part of a building) –
 - (i) a reception desk or enquiry office area having an area of not more than 10 m² and located at ground or access level; or
 - (ii) a cupboard formed by fire-resisting construction.

Basement stairways

- 2.73 Where an escape stairway forms part of the only escape route from an upper storey of a building (or part of a building) it should not serve a basement storey.

Where there is more than one escape stairway from an upper storey of a building (or part of a building) at least one should terminate at ground storey level. Other stairways may connect to a basement storey provided that they are protected at each basement level by a protected lobby or protected corridor.

External walls adjacent to protected stairways

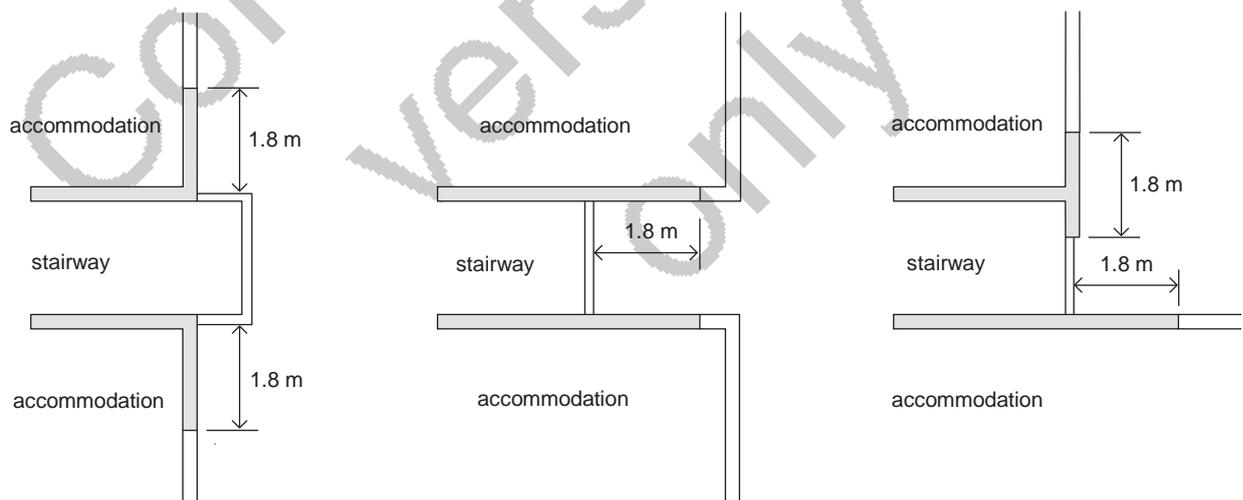
- 2.74 Where a protected stairway projects beyond, is recessed from, or is in an internal angle of the external walls of the building – the distance between any unprotected areas (see Section 5) in the adjacent external walls of the building and an unprotected area in the external walls of the protected stairway should not be less than 1.8 m, as shown in Diagram 2.10.

External escape stairs

- 2.75 Where more than one escape route is available from a storey (or part of a building), one or more than one, of those routes may be by way of an external escape stair provided that –
- (a) there is at least one internal escape stairway from every part of each storey; and
 - (b) in the case of –
 - (i) a building of Purpose Group 5 – the route is not intended for use by members of the public; or
 - (ii) a building of Purpose Group 2 – the route serves only staff accommodation (office or residential).

Diagram 2.10 External walls adjacent to protected stairways

see para 2.74



(a) projecting stairway

(b) recessed stairway

(c) internal angle

Key

-  fire-resisting walls
-  external walls which may be unprotected areas

2.76 Where an external stair is part of an escape route –

- (a) the stair should be protected from the weather when it serves a floor or flat roof more than 6 m above ground level. The degree of protection from the weather will depend on the exposure of the stair;
- (b) all doors giving access to the stair should be fire-resisting except at the top of any stair which leads downwards;
- (c) any part of the external walls within 1.8 m of the stair (measured horizontally) should be of fire-resisting construction –
 - (i) 1.8 m above (this may be reduced to 1.1 m at the top landing of the stair provided that it is not the top landing of a basement stair);
 - (ii) 1.8 m at the side of; and
 - (iii) 9 m below,the flights and landings of the stair as shown on Diagram 2.11;
- (d) the external walls of the building within 1.8 m of the escape route from the bottom of the stair should be fire-resisting to a height of 1.1 m above the escape route; and
- (e) glazing in fire-resisting external walls described in (c) and (d) above should also be fire-resisting and fixed shut (see Table 2.8 for the limitations on the use of uninsulated glazing).

Consultation
Version
only

Table 2.8 Limitations on the use of uninsulated glazing in enclosures and fire doors on escape routes

Position of glazed element	Permitted extent of glazing in parts of a building with access to –				
	A single stair		More than one stair		
	Walls	Door leaf	Walls	Door leaf	
A Purpose Group 1(b) and (c)					
1	Within the enclosures of a protected stairway or within fire-resisting separation shown in Diagram 2.3	Fixed fanlights only	Unlimited	Fixed fanlights only	Unlimited
2	Within the enclosures of an existing stair	Unlimited	Unlimited	Unlimited	Unlimited
3	Within fire-resisting separation described in paragraph 2.12(a)	Nil below 0.1 m ⁽²⁾ unlimited above 0.1 m	Nil below 0.1 m ⁽²⁾ unlimited above 0.1 m	Nil below 0.1 m ⁽²⁾ unlimited above 0.1 m	Nil below 0.1 m ⁽²⁾ unlimited above 0.1 m
4	Between an attached/integral garage and a dwellinghouse	Not applicable	Nil	Not applicable	Nil
B All other purpose groups					
5	Between residential/sleeping accommodation and a common escape route (corridor, lobby or stair)	Nil	Nil	Nil	Nil
6	Between a protected stairway ⁽¹⁾ and – (i) the accommodation; or (ii) a corridor which is not a protected corridor. Other than in item 5 above	Nil	25% of door area	Nil below 1.1 m unlimited above 1.1 m	50% of door area
7	Between – (i) a protected stairway and a protected lobby or protected corridor; or (ii) accommodation and a protected lobby. Other than in item 5 above	Nil below 1.1 m unlimited above 1.1 m	Nil below 0.1 m ⁽²⁾ unlimited above 0.1 m	Nil below 0.1 m ⁽²⁾ unlimited above 0.1 m	Nil below 0.1 m ⁽²⁾ unlimited above 0.1 m
8	Between the accommodation and a protected corridor forming a dead end. Other than in item 5 above	Nil below 1.1 m unlimited above 1.1 m	Nil below 0.1 m ⁽²⁾ unlimited above 0.1 m	Not applicable	Not applicable
9	Between accommodation and any other corridor; or subdividing corridors. Other than in item 5 above.	Not applicable	Not applicable	Nil below 0.1 m ⁽²⁾ unlimited above 0.1 m	Nil below 0.1 m ⁽²⁾ unlimited above 0.1 m

Table 2.8 Limitations on the use of uninsulated glazing in enclosures and fire doors on escape routes (cont'd)

Position of glazed element	Permitted extent of glazing in parts of a building with access to –			
	A single stair		More than one stair	
	Walls	Door leaf	Walls	Door leaf
B All other purpose groups				
10 Adjacent an external escape route described in paragraph 2.58	Unlimited above 1.1 m from level of route	Unlimited above 1.1 m from level of route	Unlimited above 1.1 m from level of route	Unlimited above 1.1 m from level of route
11 Adjacent an external escape stair described in paragraph 2.76	Not applicable	Not applicable	Unlimited	Unlimited
Notes: All heights should be measured vertically from the floor, the landing level, the stair pitch line or the external escape route. (1) If the protected stairway is also a protected shaft (see Section 4) or a firefighting stairway (see Section 6) there may be further restrictions on the uses of glazed elements. (2) The 0.1 m limit is intended to limit the probability of fire spread from a floor covering.				

Provision of refuges

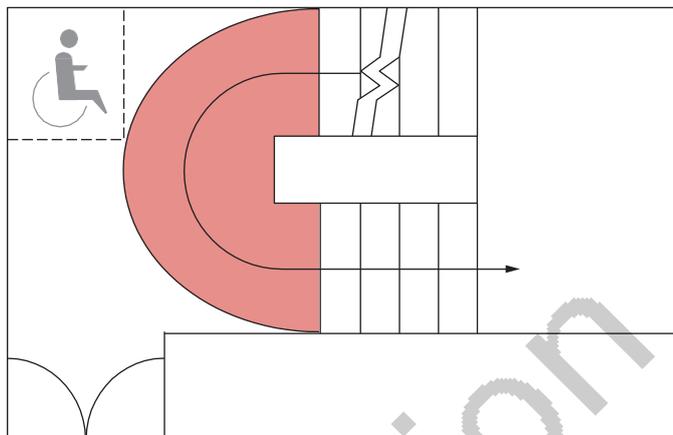
2.77 Refuges are relatively safe areas for disabled people to wait for short periods before completing their evacuation. They are not areas where disabled people should be left to wait for rescue by the Fire and Rescue Service, or to wait until the fire is extinguished.

A refuge should be provided for each protected stairway affording egress from each storey, except storeys consisting exclusively of plant rooms. A refuge should also be provided at each final exit that leads onto an external flight of steps (in this case the refuge may be external). However, refuges are not required in a small building in single occupancy which comprises not more than a basement, a ground floor and a first storey with the floor area of each storey not more than 280 m².

Note – Whilst a refuge should be provided for each stairway, they need not necessarily be located within the stair enclosure but should enable direct access to the stair. The number of refuge spaces need not necessarily equal the sum of the number of wheelchair users who can be present in the building. The use of refuges forms part of the management plan and it may be that more than one disabled person will use a single refuge as they pass through as part of the evacuation procedure.

Diagram 2.12 Refuge in a stair

see para. 2.78



Provision where access to the wheelchair space is counter to the access flow within the stairway

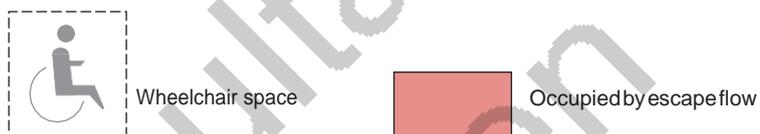
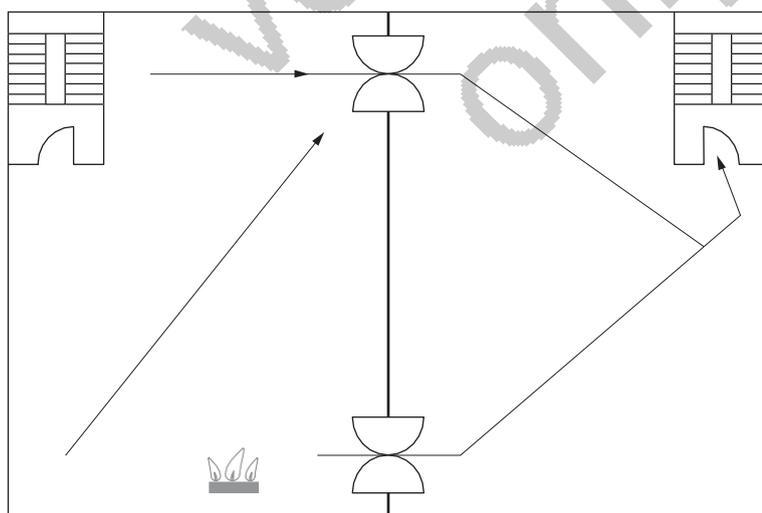


Diagram 2.13 Refuge formed by compartmentation

see para 2.78



Storey divided into two refuges by compartment wall (stairways not provided with wheelchair space).

Note:

Persons occupying the left-hand compartment would not reach a refuge until they had entered the right-hand compartment. Two doorsets in the partition are necessary in case access to one of the doorsets is blocked by fire.

-
- 2.78 The following are examples of satisfactory refuges –
- (a) an enclosure such as a protected stairway (see diagram 2.12) or protected lobby, protected corridor or compartment (see diagram 2.13); and
 - (b) an area in the open air such as a flat roof, balcony, podium or similar place which is sufficiently protected (or remote) from any fire risk and provided with its own means of escape.

Where a refuge is within a pressurised stair the smoke control system should be in accordance with BS EN 12101-6.

2.79 Each refuge should provide an area accessible to a wheelchair of at least 900 mm x 1400 mm in which a wheelchair user can await assistance. Where a refuge is in a protected stairway or protected lobby or protected corridor the wheelchair space should not reduce the width of the escape route. Where the wheelchair space is within a protected stairway, access to the wheelchair space should not obstruct the flow of persons escaping.

2.80 Refuges and evacuation lifts should be clearly identified by appropriate signs. Where a refuge is in a lobby or stairway the sign should be accompanied by a blue mandatory sign worded “Refuge - keep clear”.

2.81 To facilitate the effective evacuation of people temporarily waiting in each refuge an emergency voice communication system should be provided. It is essential that the occupants of each refuge are able to alert other people that they are in need of assistance and for them to be reassured that their presence in the refuge is known and that assistance will be forthcoming.

The emergency voice communication system should either -

- (a) comply with BS 5939-9 and consist of a Type B outstation at each refuge which communicates with a master station located in the building control room (where provided) or adjacent to the fire alarm panel; or
- (b) in some buildings, it may be more appropriate to use an alternative approach such as the use of wireless technology. Such technology needs to be readily operated by, and comprehensible to disabled people.

Evacuation lifts

2.82 In general, it is not appropriate to use a lift when there is a fire in the building. However, in some circumstances a suitably sited and protected lift containing certain safety features may be used for evacuating people. Guidance on the design, location and use of an evacuation lift is given in BS 5588-8. The evacuation lift installation should conform with BS EN 81-1 or BS EN 81-2 as appropriate for the particular type of lift.

2.83 For general provisions relating to the fire protection of lift installations, see paragraphs 2.99 and 2.100.

General provisions

- 2.84 The provisions in paragraphs 2.85 to 2.103 relate to the construction and protection of escape routes, some service installations and other matters associated with the design of escape routes.

Fire resistance

- 2.85 Details of fire resistance test criteria and standards of performance are given in Section 4.

All walls, partitions and other enclosures (including roofs that form part of an escape route) required to have fire resistance to meet the provisions of this Section should have the appropriate performance given in Tables 4.1 and 4.2. Where glazed elements in such enclosures are only able to satisfy the relevant performance in respect of integrity (i.e. uninsulated glazing), their use should be limited in accordance with Table 2.8.

All doors required to have fire resistance to meet the provisions of this Section should have the appropriate performance given in Table 4.5, should be self-closing and the extent of any uninsulated glazing should be in accordance with Table 2.8.

Seating and gangways

- 2.86 Permanent or retractable seating for closely seated audiences or spectators should be designed in accordance with Clauses 8.1 to 8.4 of BS 5588-6.

Doors on escape routes

- 2.87 In general doors on escape routes, whether fire doors or not, should only be fitted with locks or fastenings which are readily operated from the side approached by a person making an escape. The operation of such a lock or fastening should not involve the use of a key or the manipulation of more than one mechanism.

However, a door to a room may be locked when the room is not occupied provided that –

- (a) it is not an access room to an inner room; or
- (b) it is not part of an escape route for people in other parts of the building.

Where a door on an escape route has to be secured against entry when the building or part of the building is occupied, it should only be fitted with a lock or fastening which is readily operated, without a key, from the side approached by people making their escape. Similarly, where a secure door is operated by a code, combination, swipe or proximity card, biometric data or similar means, it should also be capable of being overridden from the side approached by people making their escape. Electrically powered locks should return to the unlocked position –

- (i) on operation of the fire alarm system;
- (ii) on loss of power or system failure; and

-
- (iii) on activation of a manual door release unit (Type A) to BS EN 54-11 positioned at the door on the side approached by people making their escape. Where the door provides escape in either direction, a unit should be installed on both sides of the door.

2.88 In the case of places of assembly, shop and commercial buildings, doors on escape routes from rooms with an occupant capacity of more than 60 should either not be fitted with lock, latch or bolt fastenings, or be fitted with panic fastenings in accordance with BS EN 1125.

Direction of opening of doors

2.89 Doors on escape routes should, as far as practicable, open in the direction of escape. Doors should always open in the direction of escape in the following situations –

- (a) from a place of special fire hazard;
- (b) in the case of a building of Purpose Group 6 or 7 – where the number of occupants is more than 10; and
- (c) in the case of a building of any other purpose group – where the number of people likely to use the door in the event of a fire is more than 60.

Doors on escape routes should open through not less than 90° and swing clear of any change in floor level, other than a threshold or single step (with a rise of not more than 170 mm) on the line of the doorway. At no point of its swing should a door reduce the effective width of any escape route across a landing.

A door that opens towards a corridor should be recessed to prevent its swing from encroaching on the effective width of the corridor.

2.90 Revolving doors, automatic doors and turnstiles should not be permitted across escape routes unless –

- (a) they have non-automatic swing doors of the required width immediately adjacent;
- (b) they are of the required width and easily openable in an emergency; or
- (c) where the doors are automatic –
 - (i) they are of the required width and fail safe to the open position; or
 - (ii) they are of the required width and are provided with a monitored failsafe system for opening the doors if the main electricity supply fails.

Vision panels in doors

- 2.91 A glazed vision panel, or panels of not less than 0.1 m², should be provided in a door that subdivides a corridor, or where a door swings both ways.

The vision panel or panels should include –

- (a) a lower zone of visibility not more than 500 mm to not less than 800 mm; and
- (b) an upper zone of visibility not more than 1150 mm to not less than 1500 mm,

measured from the floor and located towards the leading edge of the door. See Diagram 2.14.

Height and width of escape routes

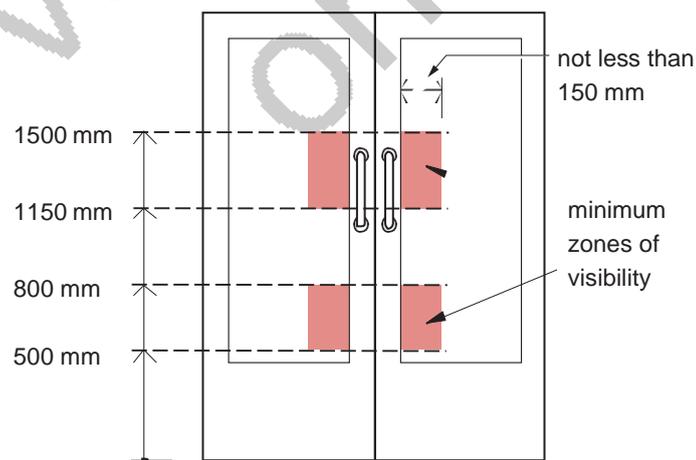
- 2.92 All escape routes should have a clear headroom of not less than 2 m and there should be no projections below this height, except for door frames.

The width of an escape route should be measured at 1.5 m above floor level or pitch line. The projection of handrails, if less than 100 mm, and stringers, skirtings and architraves if less than 30 mm, on either or both sides should be ignored.

The width of an escape doorway from a room should be taken as the clear width when the door is open (see Diagram B.6).

Diagram 2.14 Vision panels in doors

see para 2.91



Zones of visibility

Construction of escape stairs

- 2.93 Other than in a dwellinghouse every escape stair and its associated landings should be constructed of materials of limited combustibility where –
- (a) it is the only stair serving the building (or part of the building), unless the building is of two or three storeys and is of Purpose Group 1(a) or Purpose Group 3;
 - (b) it is within a basement storey, unless it is within a flat with more than one storey;
 - (c) the height to any storey which it serves is more than 18 m above ground or final exit level;
 - (d) it is a firefighting stairway (see Section 6); or
 - (e) it is external, except in the case of a stair that connects the final exit level with a floor or flat roof less than 6 m above or below final exit level.

Combustible materials may be added to the upper surface of these stairs except in the case of firefighting stairways.

Helical stairs and spiral stairs

- 2.94 Helical stairs or spiral stairs may form part of an escape route (other than for the evacuation of disabled people or for the evacuation of pupils in schools) provided that they are designed in accordance with BS 5395: Part 2. Helical stairs and spiral stairs should be of Type E (public stair) where they are intended to be used by the public.

Final exits

- 2.95 A final exit should –
- (a) have a width not less than the width of the escape route it serves, the width of a final exit doorway should be measured in accordance with B.1(g) of Appendix B;
 - (b) be sited to ensure rapid dispersal to a place of safety;
 - (c) be readily apparent to people who need to use it; and
 - (d) be sited clear of any fire hazards including fire or smoke issuing from a basement, and from openings to transformer rooms, solid waste stores, boiler rooms and similar hazards.

Lighting of escape routes

2.96 Other than in a dwellinghouse all escape routes should have adequate artificial lighting.

The areas listed in Table 2.9 should also have escape lighting, which will illuminate the escape route if the mains supply fails. Standards for the installation of escape lighting are given in BS 5266-1.

Escape lighting to escape stairways should be on a separate circuit to that supplying any other part of the escape route or building.

Table 2.9 Provisions for escape lighting

Purpose group of the building or part of the building	Areas requiring escape lighting
Purpose Group 2	All common escape routes ⁽¹⁾
Purpose Groups 3, 4 ⁽²⁾ , 6 and 7(a)	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> (a) Underground or windowless accommodation (b) Stairways in a central core or serving storey(s) more than 18 m above ground level (c) Internal corridors more than 30 m long (d) Open-plan areas more than 60 m²
Purpose Groups 4 ⁽³⁾ and 7(b)	All escape routes ⁽¹⁾ (except in a shop of not more than three storeys, with no sales floor greater than 280 m ² , provided that the shop is not a restaurant or bar)
Purpose Group 5	All escape routes ⁽¹⁾ and accommodation except for– <ul style="list-style-type: none"> (a) accommodation open on one side to view sport or entertainment during daylight hours; and (b) parts of school buildings with natural light and used only during normal school hours
All purpose groups	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> (a) All toilet accommodation having a floor area more than 8 m² (b) Windowless toilet accommodation having a floor area not more than 8 m² (c) Electricity generator rooms (d) Switch room/battery room for emergency lighting system (e) Emergency control room

Notes:

(1) Including external escape routes.

(2) Those areas of the building to which the public are not admitted.

(3) Those areas of the building to which the public are admitted.

Protected power circuits

2.97 Where it is critical for electrical circuits to be able to continue to function during a fire, protected circuits are needed. The potential for damage to cables forming protected circuits should be limited by the use of sufficiently robust cables, careful selection of cable routes and/or by the provision of physical protection in areas where cables may be susceptible to damage. Methods of cable support should generally be non-combustible and such that circuit integrity will not be reduced below that afforded by the cable.

A protected circuit for operation of equipment in the event of a fire should consist of cables meeting at least the requirements for PH 30 classification when tested in accordance with BS EN 50200 (incorporating Appendix E), or equivalent standard. It should follow a route selected to pass only through parts of the building in which the fire risk is negligible and should be separate from any circuit provided for another purpose.

In large or complex buildings there may be fire protection systems that need to operate for an extended period during a fire. Further guidance on the selection of cables for such systems is given in BS 5839-1, BS 5266-1 and BS 7346-6.

Exit signs

2.98 Other than in a dwellinghouse, exits on escape routes except those in normal use for egress, should be marked with signs which are readily visible so that the occupants of a building can clearly and readily see where the exits are.

The signs should comply with the relevant requirements of BS 5499-1 and BS 5499-4. (Advice on fire safety signs, including emergency escape signs, is given in HSE publication: *Safety signs and signals: guidance on regulations.*)

Fire protection of lift installations

2.99 As lifts penetrate floors and are usually sited within or adjacent to circulation routes they may prejudice the means of escape from the building. To safeguard against this a lift and its associated machine room should comply with the following provisions.

A lift should be –

- (a) in a protected shaft where it penetrates a compartment floor (see paragraph 4.25);
- (b) within the enclosure of a protected stairway where permitted by paragraph 2.72; or
- (c) enclosed with fire-resisting construction where its siting prejudices the means of escape.

A lift should not be continued down to serve a basement storey in a building (or part of a building) the upper storeys of which are served by a single escape stairway or if the lift is within the enclosure to an escape stairway which is terminated at ground level.

A lift in a basement or enclosed car park should be approached through a protected lobby or protected corridor unless it is in a protected stairway enclosure.

A lift should be approached through a protected lobby or protected corridor on a storey which contains a high fire risk area, if the lift also delivers directly into a corridor serving sleeping accommodation.

Lift machine rooms should be sited over the lift shaft where practicable. Where the lift is within a protected stairway which is the only protected stairway in a building (or part of a building) the machine room should be located outside the protected stairway, if it cannot be sited over the lift shaft.

In a building designed for phased evacuation, where the lift is not within a protected stairway, the lift entrance should be separated from the floor area on every storey by a protected lobby [see paragraph 2.66(b)].

2.100 A feature lift such as a wall-climber lift which rises within a large volume such as a mall or atrium and is not in a conventional well, may be at risk if it runs through a smoke reservoir. In which case care is needed to maintain the integrity of the smoke reservoir and to protect the occupants of the lift.

Mechanical ventilation systems

2.101 A mechanical ventilation system should be designed so that in a fire either –

- (a) the air movement in the building is directed away from escape routes; or
- (b) the system is closed down.

Where the system re-circulates air it should comply with the provisions of BS 5588-9 in respect of its operation under fire conditions.

Where a pressurization system is installed in a protected stairway all mechanical ventilation and air conditioning systems in the building should be compatible with it when operating under fire conditions.

Waste chutes and storage

- 2.102 A room used for the storage of waste or containing a waste chute should be –
- (a) separated from other parts of the building by fire-resisting construction;
 - (b) located outside protected stairways and protected lobbies; and
 - (c) accessed from the open air or from a protected lobby which has not less than 0.2 m² of permanent ventilation.

Shop store rooms

- 2.103 Where the siting of a fully enclosed walk-in store room within a shop prejudices a means of escape it should be separated from the retail areas by fire-resisting construction other than where –
- (a) it is provided with an automatic fire detection and fire alarm system to BS 5839-1 of at least Category L5 standard with a smoke detector or detectors located in the store room; or
 - (b) it is fitted with an automatic sprinkler system complying with the relevant recommendations of BS 5306-2 or BS EN 12845.

See Table 4.1, Item 14 (c).

- 3.1 This Section contains provisions to restrict the spread of flame over the internal wall and ceiling linings and, in some locations, to limit the contribution they will make to the growth of the fire. This Section should be read in conjunction with paragraphs 1.7 to 1.11.

The choice of materials for wall and ceiling linings can significantly affect the spread of a fire and its rate of growth, even though such linings are not likely to be the materials first ignited. This choice is particularly important in circulation spaces where linings may offer the main means by which fire spreads, and where rapid spread is most likely to prevent occupants from escaping.

Several properties of lining materials influence fire spread. These include the ease of ignition and the rate at which the lining material gives off heat when burning. The guidance relating to the European fire tests and classification provides for control of internal fire spread through control of these properties. This booklet does not give detailed guidance on other properties such as the generation of smoke and fumes.

- 3.2 Provisions regarding linings within concealed spaces, above fire-protecting suspended ceilings and enclosures to sanitary pipework are contained in Section 4. Additional provisions regarding the internal surface of rooflights are contained in Section 5.

- 3.3 This Section does not contain provisions regarding the upper surface of floors and stairs because they are not significantly involved in a fire until it is well developed. Consequently, they are not likely to contribute to the early stages of fire spread that have most impact on the safety of occupants.

Furniture and fittings can have a major effect on fire spread but it is not possible to control them under the Building Regulations. Consequently, they are not covered by this booklet.

Classification of performance of materials or products (National classification)

- 3.4 The surface spread of flame classification of a lining should be ascertained by testing in accordance with BS 476: Part 7. The classifications given in such tests are Classes 1, 2, 3 and 4. Class 0 is achieved where a lining material or the surface of a composite product is either –
- (a) composed throughout of materials of limited combustibility; or
 - (b) a Class 1 material which has when tested to BS 476: Part 6, a fire propagation index (I_1) of not more than 12 and a sub-index (i_1) of not more than 6.

A composite material of limited combustibility which does not have a surface complying with (a) or (b) should be classified by test.

Class 0 is the highest classification and Class 4 materials are not acceptable.

- 35 The term thermoplastic material includes all synthetic polymeric materials which have a softening point lower than 200°C when tested to BS EN ISO 306: Method A120 Plastics. For the purposes of this Section (and Section 4) thermoplastic materials are classified as TP(a) rigid and TP(a) flexible and TP(b) as follows –
- (a) To be classified as TP(a) rigid, a thermoplastic material should be –
 - (i) rigid solid PVC sheet;
 - (ii) solid polycarbonate sheet not less than 3 mm thick;
 - (iii) double or multiple skin rigid sheet of unplasticised PVC or polycarbonate which achieves a classification of Class 1; or
 - (iv) a rigid product, a specimen of which (at the thickness of the product as put on the market) when tested to BS 2782-0: Method 508A, extinguishes before the flame reaches the first mark and after removal of the burner, the flaming or afterglow does not exceed 5 seconds.
 - (b) To be classified as TP(a) flexible, a thermoplastic material should be a flexible product not greater than 1 mm thick which complies with the Type C requirements of BS 5867: Part 2 when tested to BS 5438 Test 2 (excluding the cleansing procedure) with the flame applied to the surface of the specimens for 5, 15, 20 and 30 seconds respectively.
 - (c) To be classified as TP(b) a thermoplastic material should be –
 - (i) rigid solid polycarbonate sheet less than 3 mm thick;
 - (ii) double or multiple skin polycarbonate sheet which does not achieve a classification of Class 1; or
 - (iii) a product which, when a specimen of material between 1.5 mm and 3 mm thick, tested to BS 2782-0: Method 508A, has a rate of burning not greater than 50 mm per minute.

Note – Currently, no new guidance is possible on the assessment or classification of thermoplastic materials under the European system since there is no generally accepted European test procedure and supporting comparative data.

- 36 Where a thermoplastic material is used as a lining to protect a wall or ceiling but is not fully bonded to a non-thermoplastic substrate the surfaces of both the thermoplastic material and the substrate should meet the provisions of paragraph 3.10. However, where a thermoplastic material is fully bonded to a non-thermoplastic substrate only the surface of the composite need meet the provisions of paragraph 3.10.

Classification of performance of materials or products (European classification)

- 3.7 Performance in terms of reaction to fire to be met by construction products is determined by Commission Decision 200/147/EC of 8th February 2000 implementing Council Directive 89/106/EEC as regards the classification of the reaction to fire performance of construction products.

The fire classification of a lining product should be in accordance with BS EN 13501-1 Fire classification of construction products and building elements, Part 1: Classification using test data from reaction to fire tests. The reaction to fire tests are –

- (a) BS EN ISO 1182 Reaction to fire tests for building products – Non-combustibility test;
- (b) BS EN ISO 1716 Reaction to fire tests for building products – Determination of the heat of combustion;
- (c) BS EN 13823 Reaction to fire tests for building products – Building products excluding floorings exposed to the thermal attack by a single burning item;
- (d) BS EN ISO 11925-2 Reaction to fire tests – Ignitability of building products subjected to direct impingement of flame – Part 2: Single-flame source test; and
- (e) BS EN 13238 Reaction to fire tests for building products – Conditioning procedures and general rules for selection of substrates.

The classifications given in BS EN ISO 13501-1 are A1, A2, B, C, D, E and F. Class A1 is the highest classification and Class F is the lowest.

Classes A2, B, C and D obtain an additional classification of –

- (i) s1, s2 or s3 regarding smoke production; and
- (ii) d0, d1 or d2 regarding the production of flaming droplets and/or particles.

Where a classification includes 's3,d2' this means that there is no limit set for smoke production and/or flaming droplets/particles.

- 3.8 National classifications do not automatically equate with the equivalent European classifications therefore products cannot typically assume a European class unless they have been tested accordingly.

Definition of wall and ceiling

- 3.9 For the purposes of the performance of wall and ceiling linings –
- (a) a wall should include –
 - (i) the surface of glazing (except glazing in a door); and
 - (ii) any part of a ceiling which slopes at an angle of more than 70° to the horizontal;

-
- (b) a wall should not include –
 - (i) doors and door frames;
 - (ii) window frames and frames in which glazing is fitted;
 - (iii) architraves, cover moulds, picture rails, skirtings and similar narrow members; and
 - (iv) fire surrounds, mantleshelves and fitted furniture;
 - (c) a ceiling should include –
 - (i) the surface of glazing; and
 - (ii) any part of a wall which slopes at an angle of 70° or less to the horizontal; and
 - (d) a ceiling should not include –
 - (i) trap doors and their frames;
 - (ii) the frames of windows or rooflights and frames in which glazing is fitted; and
 - (iii) architraves, cover moulds, picture rails, exposed beams and similar narrow members.

Performance of wall and ceiling linings

- 3.10 The surface lining of a wall and of a ceiling should have a classification not lower than the relevant Class given in Table 3.1, subject to the provisions of paragraphs 3.11 to 3.16.
- 3.11 In a room any part of the surface of a wall may be of a Class lower than that given in Table 3.1 [but not lower than Class 3 (National class) or Class D-s3,d2 (European class)] if the total area of those parts in any one room does not exceed either –
 - (a) half the floor area of the room; or
 - (b) (i) in the case of a building of Purpose Group 1 or 2 – 20 m²; or
 - (ii) in the case of a building of any other purpose group – 60 m²,whichever is the lesser.
- 3.12 A suspended ceiling which is to contribute to the fire resistance of a floor/ceiling assembly having a fire resistance of more than 60 minutes should, in addition to having the classification given in Table 3.1, be constructed of materials of limited combustibility (see Table 4.3).
- 3.13 The ceiling of a room may be constructed, either as a suspended or stretched skin membrane, from panels of a thermoplastic material of the TP(a) flexible classification provided that –
 - (a) each panel is supported on all its sides;
 - (b) each panel is not more than 5 m² in area; and
 - (c) it is not a fire-resisting ceiling.

Table 3.1 Surface classifications for walls and ceilings

Type of building	Room ⁽¹⁾ or circulation space	Surface class for both walls and ceilings	
		National class ⁽²⁾	European class ⁽²⁾⁽³⁾
Purpose Groups 1 and 2	Rooms not exceeding 4 m ²	3	D-s3,d2
	Domestic garages not exceeding 40 m ²	3	D-s3,d2
	All other rooms (including garages exceeding 40 m ²)	1	C-s3,d2
	Circulation spaces (within a dwelling)	1	C-s3,d2
	Circulation spaces (common areas)	0	B-s3,d2 or higher
All other purpose groups	Rooms not exceeding 30 m ²	3	D-s3,d2
	All other rooms	1	C-s3,d2
	Circulation spaces	0	B-s3,d2 or higher

Notes:

(1) For the meaning of room see definition in paragraph 1.1.

(2) The National classifications do not automatically equate with the equivalent classifications in the European column, therefore products cannot typically assume a European class, unless they have been tested accordingly.

(3) Where a classification includes 's3,d2', this means that there is no limit set for smoke production and flaming droplets/particles.

Rooflights

3.14 Other than in a protected stairway a rooflight may be of a classification lower than the relevant Class given in Table 3.1 provided that –

(a) where it is –

- (i) a plastic material which has a lower surface with a classification not lower than Class 3; or
- (ii) a thermoplastic material which has a lower surface with a classification not lower than Class 3 or is classified as a TP(a) rigid or TP(b) product,

the size of the rooflight does not exceed the relevant maximum area given in Table 3.2; and

(b) where there is more than one rooflight in the ceiling of a room or space –

- (i) the area of rooflights does not exceed the relevant maximum total area given in Table 3.2; and

- (ii) the disposition of the rooflights complies with the limitations given in Diagram 3.1.

The upper surface of a rooflight is subject to the provisions of Section 5.

Windows and internal glazing

- 3.15 A window in the external wall of a circulation space and all internal glazed areas should be glazed with a material having a classification not lower than that given in Table 3.1.

A window in an external wall of a room may be glazed with a thermoplastic material classified as a TP(a) rigid product.

Lighting diffusers

- 3.16 This paragraph applies to a lighting diffuser which forms part of a ceiling. It does not apply to the diffuser of a light fitting which is attached to the soffit of, or suspended beneath, a ceiling.

Table 3.2 Limitations on Class 3 plastic rooflights and thermoplastic rooflights and lighting diffusers in suspended ceilings

Minimum classification of lower surface	Use of space below rooflight or diffuser	Maximum area of each rooflight or diffuser panel ⁽¹⁾ (m ²)	Maximum total area of rooflights or diffuser panels as a percentage of floor area of the space in which the ceiling is located (%)	Minimum separation distance between rooflights or diffuser panels ⁽¹⁾ (m)
TP(a)	Rooms or circulation spaces (except protected stairways)	No limit ⁽²⁾	No limit	No limit
Class 3 ⁽³⁾ or TP(b)	Rooms	5	50 ⁽⁴⁾⁽⁵⁾	3 ⁽⁵⁾
	Circulation spaces (except protected stairways)	5	15 ⁽⁴⁾	3

Notes :

- (1) Small rooflights or diffuser panels may be grouped together provided that the overall size of the group and the space between one group and any others comply with the limitations given in Diagram 3.1.
- (2) Lighting diffusers of a TP(a) flexible material are limited to panels of not more than 5 m² (see paragraph 3.13).
- (3) There are no limitations on Class 3 materials in certain small rooms (see Table 3.1).
- (4) It may not be possible to use the maximum total percentage because the minimum 3 m separation distance must be maintained (see Diagram 3.1).
- (5) Class 3 rooflights to rooms in non-residential purpose groups may be spaced 1.8 m apart provided that the rooflights are evenly distributed and do not exceed 20% of the area of the room.

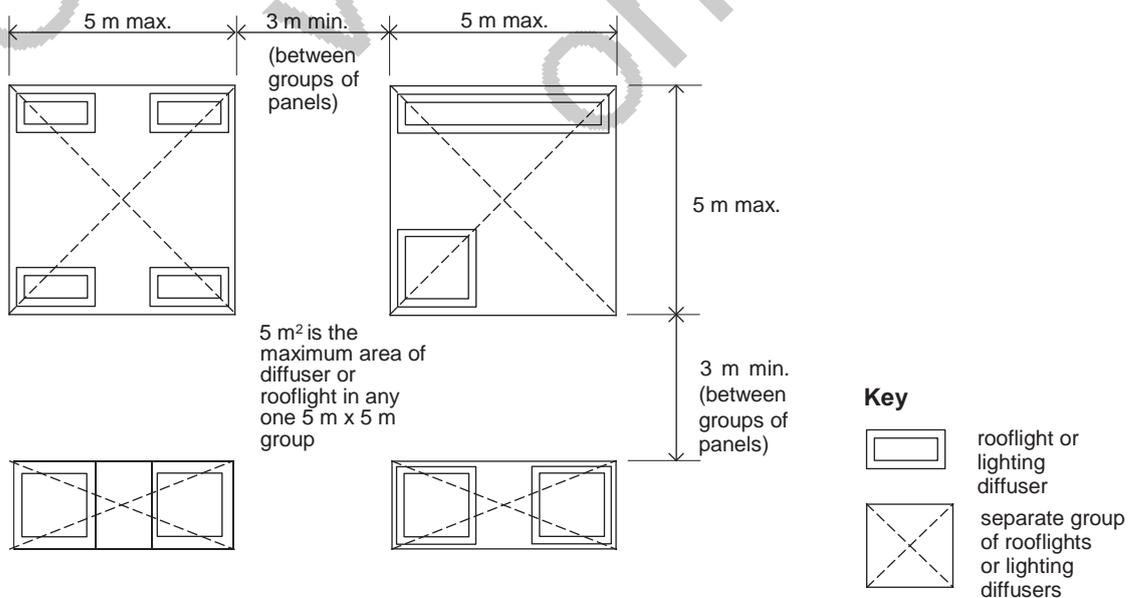
Lighting diffusers may be translucent or open-structured elements and may be part of a light fitting or be used below a rooflight or other source of light.

A thermoplastic lighting diffuser should not be incorporated in a fire-protecting or fire-resisting ceiling unless it has been satisfactorily tested as part of a luminaire within a ceiling assembly that provides the appropriate fire resistance. A ceiling in a room or in a circulation space (other than a protected stairway) may incorporate a thermoplastic lighting diffuser provided that –

- (a) the wall and ceiling surfaces exposed within the space above the ceiling (other than the upper surface of the lighting diffuser) comply with the classification given in Table 3.1 for the space below the ceiling; and
- (b) the lighting diffuser is either –
 - (i) classified as a TP(a) rigid product; or
 - (ii) classified as a TP(b) product and is loosely mounted so that it will fall out of its mounting on initial heating. Where more than one such lighting diffuser is fitted, they should be limited in their extent in accordance with Table 3.2. Small lighting diffusers may be grouped together (see Note (1) to Table 3.2 and Diagram 3.1).

Diagram 3.1 Limitations on groups of Class 3 plastic rooflights and TP(b) thermoplastic rooflights and lighting diffusers in suspended ceilings

see para 3.14(b), 3.16(b) and Table 3.2 note (1) and (4)



Section 4 Internal fire spread - Structure

- 4.1 The spread of fire within a building can be restricted by –
- (a) ensuring the elements of structure and certain other components of the building have a minimum standard of fire resistance;
 - (b) subdividing the building into compartments with fire-resisting construction;
 - (c) subdividing concealed and extensive cavities within the construction; and
 - (d) protecting openings in, and penetrations through, fire-resisting construction.

Where a building is divided into separated parts by a compartment wall (or walls), running the full height of the building in a continuous vertical plane, the provisions of this Section may be applied separately to each separated part.

Tests for fire resistance

- 4.2 The fire resistance of an element of structure or other component of a building is a measure of its ability to withstand the effects of fire in one or more of the following ways –
- (a) resistance to collapse (loadbearing capacity) denoted 'R' in European classification;
 - (b) resistance to fire penetration (integrity) denoted 'E' in European classification; and
 - (c) resistance to transfer of excessive heat (insulation) denoted 'I' in European classification.

National tests

- 4.3 Under National determination performance in respect of fire resistance should be determined in accordance with, in the case of –
- (a) loadbearing elements – BS 476: Parts 20 and 21;
 - (b) non-loadbearing elements – BS 476: Parts 20 and 22;
 - (c) suspended ceilings – BS 476: Parts 20 and 23;
 - (d) ventilation ducts – BS 476: Parts 20 and 24; and
 - (e) any element of construction tested prior to 1st January 1988 – BS 476: Part 8.

European tests

- 4.4 Under European determination performance in respect of fire resistance should be classified in accordance with Commission Decision 2000/367/EC of 3rd May 2000 implementing Council Directive 89/106/EEC as regards the classification of the resistance to fire performance of construction products, construction works and parts thereof. The fire resistance tests are –
- (a) BS EN 1363-1 Fire Resistance tests – Part 1: General requirements;
 - (b) BS EN 1363-2 Fire Resistance tests – Part 2: Alternative and additional procedures;
 - (c) BS EN 1364-1 Fire Resistance tests for non-loadbearing elements – Part 1: Walls;
 - (d) BS EN 1364-2 Fire Resistance tests for non-loadbearing elements – Part 2: Ceilings;
 - (e) BS EN 1365-1 Fire Resistance tests for loadbearing elements – Part 1: Walls;
 - (f) BS EN 1365-2 Fire Resistance tests for loadbearing elements – Part 2: Floors and roofs;
 - (g) BS EN 1365-3 Fire Resistance tests for loadbearing elements – Part 3: Beams;
 - (h) BS EN 1365-4 Fire Resistance tests for loadbearing elements – Part 4: Columns;
 - (i) BS EN 1366-1 Fire Resistance tests for service installations – Part 1: Ducts;
 - (j) BS EN 1366-2 Fire Resistance tests for service installations – Part 2: Fire dampers;
 - (k) BS EN 1634-1 Fire resistance and smoke control tests for door, shutter and openable window assemblies and elements of building hardware – Part 1: Fire resistance tests for doors, shutters and openable windows;
 - (l) BS EN 1634-2 Fire resistance and smoke control tests for door, shutter and openable window assemblies and elements of building hardware – Fire resistance characterisation test for elements of building hardware;
 - (m) BS EN 1634-3 Fire Resistance tests for door and shutter assemblies – Part 3: Smoke control doors and shutters; and
 - (n) BS EN 81-58 Safety rules for the construction and installation of lifts – Examination and tests – Part 58: Landing doors fire resistance test.

See Appendix C for full details of all publications referred to.

Specific provisions of test

- 4.5 Provision for an element of structure or other component of the building to have a specific period of fire resistance means that it should have not less than that period, in respect of the relevant aspects of performance given in Table 4.1.

Table 4.1 Specific provisions of test for fire resistance of elements of structure and other components of a building

Part of building	Minimum provisions when tested to the relevant part of BS 476 (minutes) ⁽¹¹⁾			Minimum provisions when tested to the relevant European standard (minutes) ⁽¹⁰⁾⁽¹¹⁾	Method of exposure
	Loadbearing capacity ⁽¹⁾	Integrity	Insulation		
1 Structural frame, beam or column	See Table 4.2	Not applicable	Not applicable	R see Table 4.2	Exposed faces
2 Loadbearing wall (which is not also a wall described in any of the following items)	See Table 4.2	Not applicable	Not applicable	R see Table 4.2	Each side separately
3 Floors –					
(a) in upper storey of two storey dwellinghouse (but not over a garage)	30 ⁽²⁾	15 ⁽²⁾	15 ⁽²⁾	REI 30 ⁽⁷⁾	From underside
(b) between a shop and flat above	60 or see Table 4.2 (whichever is greater)	60 or see Table 4.2 (whichever is greater)	60 or see Table 4.2 (whichever is greater)	REI 60 or see Table 4.2 (whichever is greater)	
(c) any other floor	See Table 4.2	See Table 4.2	See Table 4.2	REI see Table 4.2	
4 Roofs –					
(a) any part forming an escape route	30	30	30	REI 30	From underside
(b) any roof that performs the function of a floor	See Table 4.2	See Table 4.2	See Table 4.2	REI see Table 4.2	
5 External walls –					
(a) any part less than 1 m from any point on the relevant boundary	See Table 4.2	See Table 4.2	See Table 4.2	REI see Table 4.2	Each side separately
(b) any part 1 m or more from the relevant boundary	See Table 4.2	See Table 4.2	15	REI see Table 4.2 ⁽⁸⁾	From inside
(c) any part required to have fire resistance to protect an external escape route	30	30	No provision ⁽³⁾	RE 30 ⁽³⁾	From inside
6 Compartment wall separating occupancies	60 or see Table 4.2 (whichever is less)	60 or see Table 4.2 (whichever is less)	60 or see Table 4.2 (whichever is less)	REI 60 or see Table 4.2 (whichever is less)	Each side separately

Table 4.1 Specific provisions of test for fire resistance of elements of structure and other components of a building (cont'd)

Part of building	Minimum provisions when tested to the relevant part of BS 476 (minutes) ⁽¹¹⁾			Minimum provisions when tested to the relevant European standard (minutes) ⁽¹⁰⁾⁽¹¹⁾	Method of exposure
	Loadbearing capacity ⁽¹⁾	Integrity	Insulation		
7 Compartment wall other than in item 6 above	See Table 4.2	See Table 4.2	See Table 4.2	REI see Table 4.2	Each side separately
8 Protected shafts, excluding any firefighting shafts –					
(a) any glazing described in paragraph 4.26	Not applicable	30	No provision ⁽³⁾	E 30 ⁽³⁾	Each side separately
(b) any other part between the shaft and a protected lobby or protected corridor described in paragraph 4.26	30	30	30	REI 30	
(c) any part not described in (a) or (b) above	See Table 4.2	See Table 4.2	See Table 4.2	REI see Table 4.2	
9 Enclosure (which does not form part of a compartment wall or a protected shaft) to a –					
(a) protected stairway	30	30	30 ⁽⁴⁾	REI 30 ⁽⁴⁾	Each side separately
(b) lift shaft	30	30	30	REI 30	
(c) service shaft	30	30	30	REI 30	

Table 4.1 Specific provisions of test for fire resistance of elements of structure and other components of a building (cont'd)

Part of building	Minimum provisions when tested to the relevant part of BS 476 (minutes) ⁽¹¹⁾			Minimum provisions when tested to the relevant European standard (minutes) ⁽¹⁰⁾⁽¹¹⁾	Method of exposure
	Loadbearing capacity ⁽¹⁾	Integrity	Insulation		
10 Firefighting shafts – (a) construction separating firefighting shafts from remainder of building (b) construction with a firefighting shaft separating firefighting stairway, firefighting lift shaft and firefighting lobby	120	120	120	REI 120	From side remote from shaft
	60	60	60	REI 60	From shaft side
	60	60	60	REI 60	Each side separately
11 Enclosure (which is not a compartment wall or described in item 8) to a – (a) protected lobby or refuge (b) protected corridor	30	30	30 ⁽⁴⁾	REI 30 ⁽⁴⁾	Each side separately
	30	30	30 ⁽⁴⁾	REI 30 ⁽⁴⁾	
12 Subdivision of a corridor	30	30	30 ⁽⁴⁾	REI 30 ⁽⁴⁾	Each side separately
13 Wall separating an attached or integral garage from a dwellinghouse	30	30	30 ⁽⁴⁾	REI 30 ⁽⁴⁾	From garage side
14 Fire-resisting construction – (a) in dwellings not described elsewhere (b) enclosing places of special fire hazard (c) between retail areas in a shop and store rooms ⁽⁵⁾ (d) fire-resisting subdivision described in Note (4) to Table 4.6	30	30	30 ⁽⁴⁾	REI 30 ⁽⁴⁾	Each side separately
	30	30	30	REI 30	
	30	30	30	REI 30	
	30	30	30	REI 30	

Table 4.1 Specific provisions of test for fire resistance of elements of structure and other components of a building (cont'd)

Part of building	Minimum provisions when tested to the relevant part of BS 476 (minutes) ⁽¹¹⁾			Minimum provisions when tested to the relevant European standard (minutes) ⁽¹⁰⁾⁽¹¹⁾	Method of exposure
	Loadbearing capacity ⁽¹⁾	Integrity	Insulation		
15 Cavity barrier	Not applicable	30	15	EI 30 ⁽⁹⁾	Each side separately
16 Ceiling shown in Diagram 4.6 or 4.7	Not applicable	30	30	EI 30	From underside
17 Fire-resisting duct referred to in paragraph 4.42(e)	Not applicable	30	No provision	E 30	From outside
18 Casing around a drainage system as shown in Diagram 4.11	Not applicable	30	No provision	E 30	From outside
19 Flue walls described in paragraph 4.45	Not applicable	See Table 4.2 ⁽⁶⁾	See Table 4.2 ⁽⁶⁾	EI see Table 4.2 ⁽⁶⁾	From outside
20 Fire doors	See Table 4.5			See Table 4.5	

Notes:

- (1) Applies to loadbearing elements only.
- (2) This standard of fire resistance is referred to as modified 30 minutes.
- (3) Except for any limitations on glazed elements given in Table 2.8.
- (4) See Table 2.8 for permitted extent of uninsulated glazed elements.
- (5) Applies only to store rooms where their siting prejudices means of escape.
- (6) At least one half of the period of fire resistance required for the compartment wall or floor.
- (7) Floors under item 3a, may be considered to have met the minimum provision provided that they achieve at least 30 minutes loadbearing capacity and at least 15 minutes integrity and insulation.
- (8) External walls under item 5b may be considered to have met the minimum provision provided that they achieve the relevant provisions for loadbearing capacity and integrity given in Table 4.2 and at least 15 minutes insulation.
- (9) Cavity barriers under item 15 may be considered to have met the minimum provision provided that they achieve at least 30 minutes integrity and at least 15 minutes insulation.
- (10) 'R' is the European classification of the resistance to fire performance in respect of loadbearing capacity; 'E' is the European classification of the resistance to fire performance in respect of integrity; and 'I' is the European classification of the resistance to fire performance in respect of insulation.
- (11) The National classifications do not automatically equate with the equivalent classifications in the European column, therefore products cannot typically assume a European class unless they have been tested accordingly.

Fire resistance of elements of structure and certain other components of the building

- 4.6 An element of structure and those other components of the building given in Table 4.1 should have a minimum period of fire resistance of not less than that given in Tables 4.1 and 4.2 for the purpose group of the building.

Where one element of structure or other component supports, carries or gives stability to another, the fire resistance of the supporting element or component should be not less than the minimum period of fire resistance for the other element (whether that other element is loadbearing or not).

Where an element of structure or other component forms part of more than one building or compartment, the fire resistance of that element or component should be not less than the greater of the relevant provisions.

Fire protecting suspended ceilings

- 4.7 A suspended ceiling will only be accepted as contributing to the fire resistance of a floor where that ceiling is of the appropriate type given in Table 4.3.

Fire-resisting construction

- 4.8 Where an element of structure or other component of the building is required to have fire resistance it may be constructed in accordance with an appropriate specification in Part II of the Building Research Establishment Report – *Guidelines for the construction of fire-resisting structural elements* (BR 128: 1988).

Places of special fire hazard

- 4.9 Every place of special fire hazard should be enclosed by fire-resisting construction [see Table 4.1, item 14(b)].

Table 4.2 Minimum periods of fire resistance

Purpose group of building	Minimum period (minutes) for elements of structure and other components of the building forming part of					
	Basement storey* including floor over		Ground or upper storey			
	Depth (m) of basement		Height (m) of top floor above ground in building or separated part of building ⁽¹⁾			
	More than 10	Not more than 10	Not more than 5	More than 5 not more than 18	More than 18 not more than 30	More than 30
1 Residential (dwellings) – (a) flats (b) and (c) dwellinghouses	90 Not relevant	60 30*	30* 30*	60 ^{(2)**} 60 [@]	90** Not relevant	120** Not relevant
2 Residential – (a) institutional (b) other residential	90 90	60 60	30** 30*	60 60	90 90	120# 120#
3 Office – not sprinklered sprinklered ⁽³⁾	90 60	60 60	30* 30*	60 30*	90 60	Not permitted 120#
4 Shop and commercial – not sprinklered sprinklered ⁽³⁾	90 60	60 60	60 30*	60 60	90 60	Not permitted 120#
5 Assembly and recreation – not sprinklered sprinklered ⁽³⁾	90 60	60 60	60 30*	60 60	90 60	Not permitted 120#
6 Industrial – not sprinklered sprinklered ⁽³⁾	120 90	90 60	60 30*	90 60	120 90	Not permitted 120#
7 Storage and other non-residential – (a) any building or part not described elsewhere – not sprinklered sprinklered ⁽³⁾	120 90	90 60	60 30*	90 60	120 90	Not permitted 120#

Table 4.2 Minimum periods of fire resistance (cont'd)

Purpose group of building	Minimum period (minutes) for elements of structure and other components of the building forming part of					
	Basement storey* including floor over		Ground or upper storey			
	Depth (m) of basement		Height (m) of top floor above ground in building or separated part of building ⁽¹⁾			
	More than 10	Not more than 10	Not more than 5	More than 5 not more than 18	More than 18 not more than 30	More than 30
7 (b) car park for light vehicles –						
(i) open sided car park ⁽⁴⁾	Not applicable	Not applicable	15* ^{\$(5)}	15* ^{\$(5)}	15* ^{\$(5)}	Not applicable
(ii) any other car park	90	60	30*	60	90	120 [#]

Notes:

+ The floor over a basement (or if there is more than one basement, the floor over the topmost basement) should meet the provisions for the ground and upper storeys if that period is higher.

* Increased to a minimum of 60 minutes for compartment walls separating buildings.

** Reduced to 30 minutes for any floor within a flat with more than one storey, but not if the floor contributes to the support of the building as a whole.

@ Reduced to 30 minutes for a dwellinghouse having not more than three storeys and for the wall or floor separating a dwellinghouse from an attached or integral garage.

Multi-storey hospitals designed in accordance with Northern Ireland Firecode documents should have a minimum of 60 minutes.

\$ Increased to a minimum of 30 minutes for elements protecting the means of escape.

Reduced to 90 minutes for elements not forming part of the structural frame.

(1) A single storey building or a single storey separated part of a building should be subject to the period given under the heading "Not more than 5" and where it has a basement storey or storeys they should be subject to the period appropriate to their depth.

(2) Reduced to 30 minutes where an existing building of not more than three storeys is being converted.

(3) "Sprinklered" means that the building is fitted throughout with an automatic sprinkler system complying with the relevant requirements of BS 5306-2 or BS EN 12845 in respect of occupancy rating and additional requirements for life safety.

(4) Car parks which comply with paragraphs 4.49 and 4.50.

(5) For the purposes of this technical booklet the following types of steel elements are deemed to have satisfied the minimum period of fire resistance of 15 minutes when tested to the European test method –

(i) Beams supporting concrete floors, maximum $A_m/V = 230 \text{ m}^{-1}$ operating under full design load.

(ii) Free standing columns, maximum $A_m/V = 180 \text{ m}^{-1}$ operating under full design load.

(iii) Wind bracing and struts, maximum $A_m/V = 210 \text{ m}^{-1}$ operating under full design load.

The meaning of ' A_m/V ' is given in BS 5950-8 Structural use of steel work in building - Code of practice for fire resistant design and is in line with European terminology. (This section factor was previously known as H_p/A .)

Table 4.3 Limitations of fire-protecting suspended ceilings

Height of building or separated part (m)	Type of floor	Fire resistance of floor required by Table 4.2 (minutes)	Type of suspended ceiling (see notes)
Less than 18	Not compartment	60 or less	W, X, Y or Z
	Compartment	Less than 60	
			60
18 or more	Any	60 or less	Y or Z
No limit	Any	More than 60	Z

Notes:

Ceiling type Description

- W Surface of ceiling exposed to the cavity should be Class 0 or Class 1 (National Class) or Class C-s3,d2 or higher (European Class).
- X Surface of ceiling exposed to the cavity should be Class 0 (National Class) or Class B-s3,d2 or higher (European Class).
- Y Surface of ceiling exposed to the cavity should be Class 0 (National Class) or Class B-s3,d2 or higher (European Class). Ceiling should not contain easily openable access panels.
- Z Ceiling should be of a material of limited combustibility and not contain easily openable access panels. Any insulation above the ceiling should be of a material of limited combustibility.

Any access panels provided in fire-protecting suspended ceilings of Type Y or Z should be secured in position by releasing devices or screw fixings, and they should be shown to have been tested in the ceiling assembly in which they are incorporated.

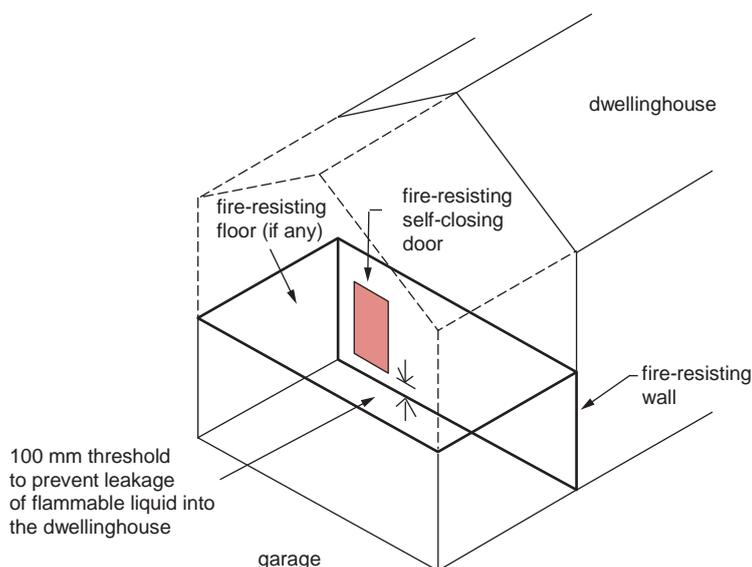
European classifications

The National classifications do not automatically equate with the equivalent European classifications, therefore products cannot typically assume a European class unless they have been tested accordingly.

Where a classification includes 's3,d2' this means that there is no limit set for smoke production and/or flaming droplets/particles.

Diagram 4.1 Doorway between dwellinghouse and garage

see para 4.10



Dwellinghouses with attached garages

- 4.10 Where a dwellinghouse has an attached or integral garage it should be separated from the garage by fire-resisting construction with no openings other than for a fire-resisting self-closing door. In the case of a doorway between the dwellinghouse and the garage the doorway should have a threshold height of not less than 100 mm above the garage floor level to prevent the leakage of flammable liquid into the dwellinghouse (see Diagram 4.1).

Variations of the provisions regarding fire resistance

- 4.11 A provision for an element of structure to have fire resistance should not apply to –
- (a) any part of the structure which only supports a roof unless –
 - (i) the roof performs the function of a floor, e.g. as a means of escape, for parking of vehicles, etc.;
 - (ii) the structure is part of, or is essential for the stability of an external wall which, under the provisions of Section 4, cannot be an unprotected area; or
 - (iii) the structure is part of or supports a compartment wall or a wall between a dwellinghouse and an attached or integral garage;
 - (b) in the case of a single storey building or a building which consists of a ground storey and one or more basement storeys – any element of structure which forms part of the ground storey unless the element –
 - (i) supports a gallery; or
 - (ii) is located as defined in sub-paragraph 4.11 (a)(ii) or 4.11 (a)(iii);
 - (c) the lowest floor of a building; and
 - (d) a platform floor.
- 4.12 Where one side of a basement storey or compartment is (due to the slope of the ground) open at and provides – means of escape and fire and rescue access at ground level and smoke venting, the period of resistance for the elements of structure and other components of the building in that basement storey or compartment should be that appropriate to a storey above the ground.
- 4.13 Where the roof space of an existing two storey dwellinghouse is to be converted to form a new storey the provisions of this Section are for the floors, both old and new, to have full 30 minutes fire resistance. However, the existing first floor construction need not be upgraded where it separates only rooms (and not circulation spaces) provided that –
- (a) only one storey is being added;
 - (b) the new storey contains not more than two habitable rooms;
 - (c) the total area of the new storey is not more than 50 m²;
 - (d) it has at least modified 30 minutes fire resistance; and
 - (e) the provisions of paragraphs 2.17 to 2.22 are met.

Raised storage floors

- 4.14 Raised free-standing floors supported by racking are frequently erected for storage purposes and whether they are considered as a gallery or as a floor forming a storey the provisions for fire resistance for elements of structure apply.

In the case of automated storage systems where people do not normally frequent any of the raised storage tiers it is not necessary to provide the storage structure with fire resistance.

Where people frequent the storage tiers in the course of their normal use, the provisions for fire resistance for the raised storage floor and its supporting structure may be dispensed with where the number of persons likely to be on the raised floor at any one time is low (and does not include members of the public) and the raised floor –

- (a) is within a single storey building or compartment and is structurally free-standing;
- (b) consists of only one tier with the space both above and below used only for storage purposes;
- (c) is not more than 20 m in both width and length and does not exceed one half of the floor area of the space in which it is situated. However, these limits should not apply where the building is fitted throughout with an automatic sprinkler system complying with the relevant recommendations of BS 5306-2 or BS EN 12845 in respect of occupancy rating and additional requirements for life safety;
- (d) is served by a stair or stairs to comply with the relevant maximum travel distance given in Table 2.3 and at least one stair discharges within 4.5 m of an exit from the building or compartment;
- (e) has a surface classification on the underside not lower than Class 3 (National class) or Class D-s3,d2 (European class) (see paragraphs 3.4 and 3.7); and
- (f) is designed and constructed so that any persons on the floor will be readily aware of a fire starting on the lower level. Design and construction features include the use of perforations in the floor, leaving a space between the floor and the walls of the space housing it and automatic fire detection and alarm systems. However, where either the length or width of a raised storage floor is greater than 10 m an automatic fire detection and fire alarm system to BS 5839-1 of at least Category L5 standard with a smoke detector or detectors located to give warning of a fire below the floor should be provided.

Compartmentation

- 4.15 The degree to which a building or separated part of a building is subdivided into compartments is related to the use of and the fire load in the building, the height to the top storey and the provision or otherwise of a sprinkler system. Compartmentation may assist in meeting the provisions of Section 2 or Section 5 of this Technical Booklet.

For compartmentation to be effective there should be continuity at the junctions of the fire-resisting elements enclosing the compartment and any opening from one compartment to another should not present a weakness. The spaces which connect compartments, e.g. stairs, service shafts, etc., should be enclosed to form protected shafts and their walls and floors should be constructed as compartment walls and compartment floors.

- 4.16 In the case of a two storey building of Purpose Group 4 or 6, where the use of the upper storey is ancillary to the main use of the ground storey, the ground storey may be treated as a single storey building for compartmentation purposes provided that –
- (a) the floor area of the upper storey is not more than –
 - (i) one fifth of the floor area of the ground storey; or
 - (ii) 500 m²,whichever is the lesser; and
 - (b) the upper storey is a separate compartment.

Provision of compartment walls and compartment floors

- 4.17 In buildings of all purpose groups –
- (a) a compartment wall should be constructed where a wall –
 - (i) is common to two or more buildings; or
 - (ii) is provided to divide a building into separated parts; and
 - (b) a compartment wall or a compartment floor, as appropriate should be constructed to separate parts of a building which are in different purpose groups of Appendix A.
- 4.18 The following walls or floors should be constructed as compartment walls or compartment floors –
- (a) in a building of Purpose Group 1(b) or (c) –
 - (i) a wall which separates semi-detached dwellinghouses or dwellinghouses in a terrace (in these cases each dwellinghouse should be treated as a separate building); and
 - (ii) a wall or floor which separates a dwellinghouse from an attached or integral garage;
 - (b) in a building of Purpose Group 1(a) –
 - (i) every floor, other than a floor within a flat with more than one storey;
 - (ii) every wall which separates a flat from any other part of the building; and
 - (iii) every wall enclosing a communal waste container;

-
- (c) in a building of Purpose Group 2 –
 - (i) every floor; and
 - (ii) in the case of a health care building – a wall needed to divide a storey into compartments for means of escape purposes;
 - (d) in a building of Purpose Group 4, 6 or 7 a wall or floor provided to divide the building into different occupancies (i.e. ownership, tenancies or similar); and
 - (e) in a building of Purpose Group 3, 4, 5, 6, or 7 –
 - (i) a wall which is needed to subdivide a building, or separated part of a building, so that the maximum floor area or maximum volume, as appropriate, of a compartment given in Table 4.4 is not exceeded;
 - (ii) every floor in a building or a separated part of a building (other than the lowest floor) where that building or separated part has a floor at a height of more than 30 m above ground level;
 - (iii) the floor of the ground storey where a building or separated part of a building has one or more basements (with the exception of a small building described in paragraph 2.68); and
 - (iv) every basement floor in a building, or a separated part of a building (other than the lowest basement floor), where that building or separated part has a floor at a depth of more than 10 m below ground level.

Construction of compartment walls and compartment floors

4.19 Every compartment wall and compartment floor should –

- (a) form a complete barrier to fire between the compartments they separate; and
- (b) have the appropriate fire resistance required by paragraph 4.6.

A compartment wall may have timber beams, joists, purlins and rafters built into it provided that –

- (i) the wall is of masonry or concrete construction;
- (ii) any gaps between the wall and the timber are as small as practicable; and
- (iii) any gaps are fire-stopped in accordance with paragraphs 4.46 and 4.47.

A compartment wall between two or more buildings should extend the full height of the buildings in a continuous vertical plane. Thus adjoining buildings should be separated only by walls and not by floors.

A compartment wall used to form a separated part of a building should extend the full height of the building in a continuous vertical plane. Thus separated parts should be separated only by walls and not by floors.

Table 4.4 Maximum floor areas and volumes of buildings or compartments

Purpose group of building (or part)	Height of top storey of building above ground level (m)	Floor area of any one storey in the building or compartment (m ²)		Maximum compartment volume (m ³)	
		In a multi-storey building	In a single-storey building	In a multi-storey building	In a single-storey building
3 Office	No limit	No limit	No limit	No limit	No limit
4 Shop and commercial – (i) shop – not sprinklered sprinklered ⁽¹⁾ (ii) other than shop – not sprinklered sprinklered	No limit	2000	2000	No limit	No limit
	No limit	4000	No limit	No limit	No limit
	No limit	2000	No limit	No limit	No limit
	No limit	4000	No limit	No limit	No limit
5 Assembly and recreation – (i) school not sprinklered sprinklered ⁽¹⁾ (ii) other than school – not sprinklered sprinklered ⁽¹⁾	No limit	800	800	No limit	No limit
	No limit	2000	No limit	No limit	No limit
	No limit	2000	No limit	No limit	No limit
	No limit	4000	No limit	No limit	No limit
6 ⁽³⁾ Industrial – not sprinklered sprinklered ⁽¹⁾	Not more than 18 More than 18	7000 2000 ⁽²⁾	No limit No limit	No limit No limit	No limit No limit
	Not more than 18 More than 18	14000 4000 ⁽²⁾	No limit No limit	No limit No limit	No limit No limit
7 Storage and other non-residential – (a) ⁽³⁾ storage and any use not described elsewhere – not sprinklered sprinklered ⁽¹⁾ (b) car park for light vehicles	Not more than 18 More than 18	No limit No limit	No limit No limit	20000 4000 ⁽²⁾	No limit No limit
	Not more than 18 More than 18	No limit No limit	No limit No limit	40000 8000 ⁽²⁾	No limit No limit
	No limit	No limit	No limit	No limit	No limit

Notes:

(1) 'Sprinklered' means that the building is fitted throughout with an automatic sprinkler system meeting the relevant recommendations of BS 5306-2 or BS EN 12845, i.e. the relevant occupancy rating together with the additional requirements for life safety.

(2) This reduced limit applies only to those storeys which are more than 18 m above ground level.

(3) There may be additional limitations on floor area, volume and/or sprinkler provisions in certain industrial and storage uses under other legislation.

Junctions of compartment walls and compartment floors with other walls

- 4.20 Where a compartment wall or compartment floor meets a compartment wall or an external wall the junction should maintain the fire resistance for a period of not less than the period of fire resistance required by the compartment wall or compartment floor.

Junction of compartment walls and roofs

- 4.21 If a fire penetrates a roof near a compartment wall there is a risk that it will spread over the roof to the adjoining compartment. Where a compartment wall meets a roof it should –
- (a) where the roof covering has a designation of AA, AB or AC (see paragraph 5.21), on a substrate or deck of a material of limited combustibility, for a width of not less than 1.5 m on either side of the junction – be taken up to meet the underside of the roof covering or deck and the junction fire-stopped [see Diagram 4.2(a)]. Where double skinned insulated roof sheeting is used it should incorporate a firebreak formed by a band of material of limited combustibility not less than 300 mm wide centred over the wall.

Note – Thermoplastic rooflights which by virtue of paragraph 5.25 are regarded as having an AA (National class) designation or $B_{ROOF}(t_4)$ (European class) are not suitable for use in the zone described above.
However, where the building is of Purpose Group 1, 2(b), 3 or 5 and is not more than 15 m in height a combustible substrate of timber boarding, wood wool slabs or timber tiling battens may be carried over the compartment wall provided it is fully bedded in mortar, or no less suitable material, over the entire width of the wall [see Diagram 4.2(b)]; or
 - (b) be extended up through the roof to a height of not less than 375 mm above the top surface of the roof covering [see Diagram 4.2(c)].

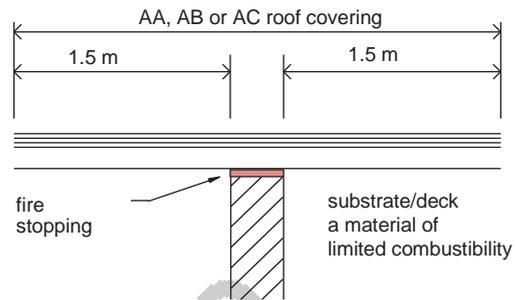
In paragraph (a) where roof support members pass through the wall they should be fire protected for a length of not less than 1.5 m on either side of the wall in order to avoid distortion at the junction.

Openings in compartment walls which separate buildings or occupancies

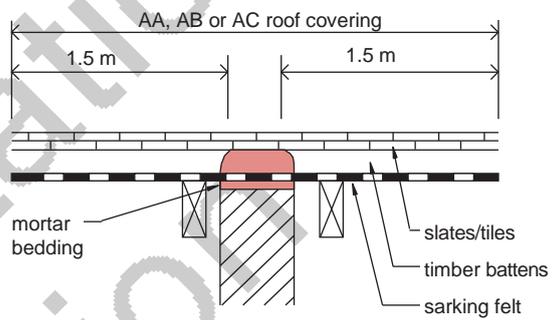
- 4.22 A compartment wall which is common to two or more buildings, or which separates different occupancies in the same building, should have no openings other than those for –
- (a) means of escape in case of fire – when a fire-resisting self-closing door (see paragraphs 4.29 to 4.35) having the same period of fire resistance as that of the compartment wall should be provided; and
 - (b) the passage of a pipe – when the opening in the wall should comply with paragraphs 4.43 and 4.45 to 4.47.

Diagram 4.2 Junction of compartment wall and roof

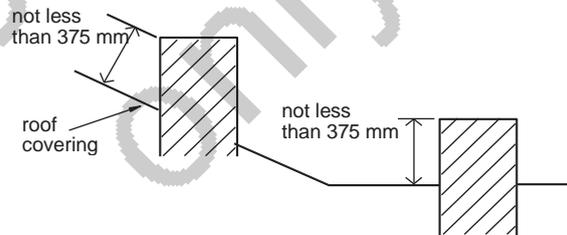
see para 4.21 (a) and (b)



(a) Any building



**(b) Building of Purpose Group
1, 2(b), 3 or 5 not more than
15 m in height**



(c) Any building

Openings in other compartment walls and in compartment floors

- 4.23 A compartment wall (other than one described in paragraph 4.22) and a compartment floor should have no openings other than those –
- (a) having a fire-resisting self-closing door (see paragraph 4.29 to 4.35);
 - (b) for the passage of pipes, ventilation ducts, chimneys, appliance ventilation duct or duct encasing one or more flue pipes – when the opening in the compartment wall or compartment floor should comply with paragraphs 4.43 to 4.47;
 - (c) for a waste chute system constructed of non-combustible materials;
 - (d) for an atrium designed in accordance with BS 5588-7; and
 - (e) for a protected shaft which complies with the provisions of paragraph 4.25 to 4.28.
- 4.24 The combined width of openings for fire doors in a compartment wall should be not more than 25% of the length of the compartment wall.

Protected shafts between compartments

- 4.25 A protected shaft should only be used to accommodate stairs, lifts, escalators, chutes, ducts, pipes, sanitary accommodation and washrooms. Where a protected shaft contains a protected stairway, Section 2 imposes additional requirements (see paragraphs 2.69 to 2.73) and where it contains a firefighting stairway Section 6 imposes additional requirements (see paragraphs 6.3 to 6.6).

The construction enclosing a protected shaft, other than a wall which is part of an external wall, should –

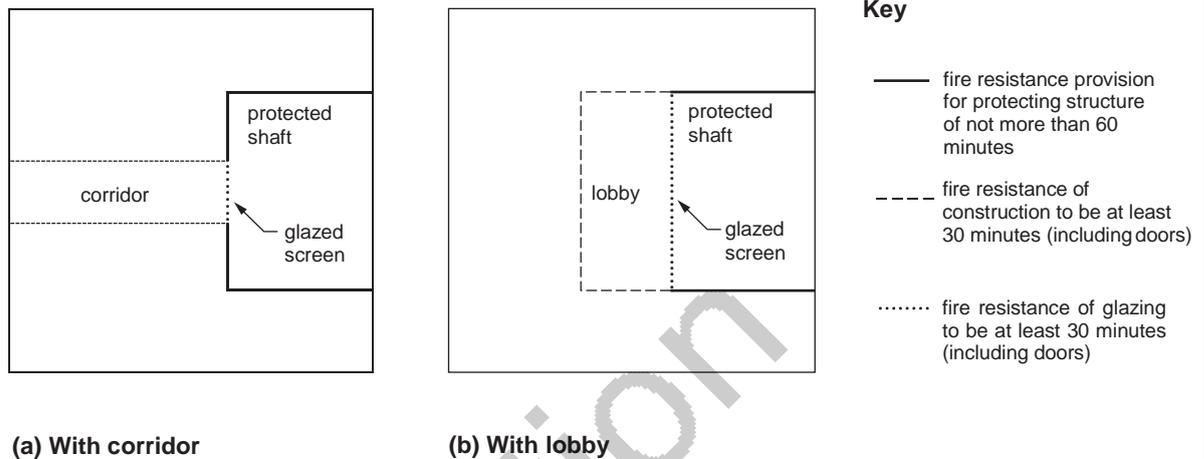
- (a) form a complete barrier to fire between the different compartments which the shaft connects;
- (b) have the same fire resistance as the compartment through which it is passing, other than where a glazed screen complying with paragraph 4.26 is provided; and
- (c) satisfy the provisions regarding ventilation in paragraph 4.27 and regarding the treatment of openings in paragraph 4.28.

Glazed screens in protected shafts

- 4.26 Glazing may be incorporated in the wall between a protected shaft containing a stairway, and a corridor or lobby which gives access to that stairway provided that –
- (a) the protected shaft is not a firefighting shaft;
 - (b) the protected shaft is not required to have more than 60 minutes fire resistance; and
 - (c) the glazing has not less than 30 minutes fire resistance in respect of integrity; and either –
 - (i) the glazing is limited in extent in accordance with Table 2.8; or
 - (ii) the corridor or lobby has not less than 30 minutes fire resistance (see Diagram 4.3).

Diagram 4.3 Glazed screen separating protected shaft from corridor or lobby

see para 4.26(c)



Pipes for oil or gas and ventilation ducts in protected shafts

4.27 Where a protected shaft contains –

(a) a stairway and/or a lift it should not contain –

- (i) a pipe conveying oil, other than in the mechanism of a hydraulic lift; or
- (ii) a ventilation duct, other than a duct provided for the purposes of pressurizing the shaft to keep it free from smoke in the event of fire or a duct provided solely for ventilating the stairway; and

(b) a pipe conveying flammable gas it should be adequately ventilated directly to external air by ventilation openings at both high and low levels in the shaft. Any pipe conveying natural gas or LPG should be of screwed steel or of all welded steel construction.

Openings in protected shafts

4.28 (a) Where the wall of a protected shaft is common to two or more buildings no opening should be provided in that wall other than for –

- (i) means of escape in case of fire – when a fire-resisting self-closing door, having the same period of fire resistance as the protected shaft, should be provided; and
- (ii) the passage of a pipe – when the opening should comply with paragraphs 4.43 and 4.45 to 4.47.

-
- (b) Other than in walls subject to sub-paragraph (a) and external walls, a protected shaft should only have openings for –
- (i) a fire-resisting self-closing door which complies with paragraph 4.29;
 - (ii) the passage of a pipe where the opening complies with paragraphs 4.43 and 4.45 to 4.47;
 - (iii) where the shaft is or contains a ventilation duct – the inlets to, outlets from and opening for a ventilation duct which complies with paragraph 4.44;
 - (iv) where the shaft is pressurized for the purposes of paragraph 2.64 – the inlet from and opening for the ductwork; and
 - (v) where the shaft contains a lift – the passage of lift cables into a lift motor room. Where the motor room is at the bottom of the shaft the opening should be as small as practicable.

Fire doors

- 4.29 A fire door should have the performance appropriate to the location given in Table 4.5 and should be fitted with an automatic self-closing device (other than those fire doors to cupboards and ducts, which are to be kept locked shut when not in use).
- 4.30 (a) Under National determination fire doors are classified by their performance under test to BS 476: Part 22 in respect of integrity expressed in minutes. A suffix (S) is added for doors where smoke leakage at ambient temperatures is to be restricted.
- (b) Under European determination fire doors are classified by their performance with reference to Commission Decision 2000/367/EC of 3rd May 2000 implementing Council Directive 89/106/EEC as regards the classification of the resistance to fire performance of construction products, construction works and parts thereof. All fire doors should be classified in accordance with BS EN 13501-2 Fire classification of construction products and building elements – Part 2: Classification using data from fire resistance tests, excluding ventilation services. Performance in respect of integrity (E) is expressed in minutes. An additional classification of 'Sa' is used where smoke leakage at ambient temperatures is to be restricted. The fire resistance tests are –
- (i) BS EN 1634-1 Fire resistance and smoke control tests for door, shutter and openable window assemblies and elements of building hardware – Part 1: Fire resistance tests for doors, shutters and openable windows;
 - (ii) BS EN 1634-2 Fire resistance and smoke control tests for door, shutter and openable window assemblies and elements of building hardware – Part 2: Fire resistance characterisation test for elements of building hardware;
 - (iii) BS EN 1634-3 Fire Resistance tests for door and shutter assemblies – Part 3: Smoke control doors and shutters; and
 - (iv) BS EN 81-58 Safety rules for the construction and installation of lifts – Examination and tests – Part 58: Landing doors fire resistance test, which may be used for lift landing doors in accordance with European Parliament Council Directive 95/16/EC of 29/06/1995 implementing the Lifts Regulations 1997.

Table 4.5 Performance of fire doors

Location of door	Minimum fire resistance of door in terms of integrity (minutes) when tested to BS 476: Part 22 ⁽¹⁾⁽³⁾	Minimum fire resistance of door in terms of integrity (minutes) when tested to the relevant European standard ⁽³⁾
1 In a compartment wall separating buildings	As for the wall in which the door is fitted, but a minimum of 60	As for the wall in which the door is fitted, but a minimum of 60
2 In a compartment wall not described in item 1 above – (a) where it separates a flat from a space in common use (b) where it forms part of a protected shaft forming a stairway situated wholly or partly above the adjoining ground in a building of Purpose Group 1(a), 2, 3 or 5 (c) enclosing a protected shaft forming a stairway not described in (b) above (d) enclosing a protected shaft forming a lift or service shaft (e) not described in (a), (b), (c) or (d) above	30S ⁽²⁾ 30S ⁽²⁾ Half the period of fire resistance of the wall in which it is fitted but 30 minimum and with suffix S Half the period of fire resistance of the wall in which it is fitted but 30 minimum As for the wall it is fitted in, but with suffix S if the door is used for progressive horizontal evacuation	E30Sa E30Sa Half the period of fire resistance of the wall in which it is fitted but 30 minimum and with suffix Sa Half the period of fire resistance of the wall in which it is fitted but 30 minimum As for the wall it is fitted in, but with suffix Sa if the door is used for progressive horizontal evacuation
3 In a compartment floor	As for the floor in which it is fitted	As for the floor in which it is fitted
4 In the wall of a protected shaft, not described in items 2(b), (c) or (d) above, which is – (a) a protected stairway (other than one described in item 9 below) (b) a lift shaft or a service shaft (c) any other shaft	30S ⁽²⁾ 30 30S ⁽²⁾	E30Sa E30 E30Sa
5 In the enclosure of – (a) a protected lobby or protected corridor to a stairway (b) a protected lobby approach to a lift shaft [see paragraph 2.66(b)] (c) any other protected corridor (d) a place of special fire hazard	30S ⁽²⁾ 30S ⁽²⁾ 20S ⁽²⁾ 30S ⁽²⁾	E30Sa E30Sa E20Sa E30Sa
6 In an external wall and giving access to an external escape route	30	E30
7 Subdividing – (a) corridors connecting alternative storey exits (b) dead-end portions of corridors from the remainder of the corridor	20S ⁽²⁾ 20S ⁽²⁾	E20Sa E20Sa

Table 4.5 Performance of fire doors (cont'd)

Location of door	Minimum fire resistance of door in terms of integrity (minutes) when tested to BS 476: Part 22 ⁽¹⁾⁽³⁾	Minimum fire resistance of door in terms of integrity (minutes) when tested to the relevant European standard ⁽³⁾
8 Any door – (a) within a cavity barrier (b) between a dwellinghouse and a garage (c) in the enclosure to a communal area in sheltered housing	30 30 30S ⁽²⁾	E30 E30 E30Sa
9 Any door – (a) forming part of the enclosures to a protected stair in a single family dwellinghouse (b) within any other fire-resisting construction in a dwelling	20 20	E20 E20

Notes:

- (1) To BS 476: Part 22 (or BS 476: Part 8 subject to paragraph 4.5).
- (2) Unless pressurization techniques complying with BS EN 12101-6 are used, these doors should also –
(a) have a leakage rate not exceeding 3 m³/m/hour (head and jambs only) when tested at 25 Pa under BS 476: Section 31.1; or
(b) meet the additional classification requirements of 'Sa' when tested to BS EN 1634-3, Fire resistance tests for door and shutter assemblies, Part 3 – Smoke control doors and shutters.
- (3) The National classifications do not automatically equate with the equivalent classifications in the European column, therefore products cannot typically assume a European class unless they have been tested accordingly.

4.31 The method of test exposure is from each side of the door separately, except in the case of lift doors, which are tested from the landing side only.

Any test evidence used to substantiate the fire resistance rating of a door or shutter should be carefully checked to ensure that it adequately demonstrates compliance and is applicable to the complete installed assembly. Small differences in detail (such as glazing apertures, intumescent strips, door frames and ironmongery etc.) may significantly affect the rating.

4.32 A fire door should only be held open by –

- (a) a fusible link, provided that the provisions of paragraph 4.34 are complied with where the door opening is provided for means of escape;
- (b) an automatic release mechanism complying with BS 5839-3 provided that –
 - (i) the release mechanism is activated by an automatic fire detection and fire alarm system to BS 5839-1 of at least Category L5 standard with a smoke detector located on either side of the door;
 - (ii) the door can be closed manually; and
 - (iii) the door does not give access to a firefighting stairway; or

(c) a door co-ordinator device which co-ordinates the closing sequence of rebated double leaf swing doors.

4.33 Unless shown to be satisfactory when tested as part of a fire door assembly, the hinges on which a fire door is hung should be made from material having a melting point of at least 800°C.

4.34 Where an opening is provided for, or opens onto, a means of escape and it is intended that the door should be held open by a fusible link, a second door having 30 minutes fire resistance should be provided. This second door should be capable of closing the opening and be easily opened by hand.

Where two fire doors are fitted in the same opening and each door is capable of closing that opening, the total fire resistance may be taken as the sum of their individual fire resistance.

4.35 All fire doors, other than those listed below, should be marked with an appropriate fire safety sign complying with BS 5499: Part 1 indicating whether the door is –

- (a) to be kept closed when not in use;
- (b) to be kept locked shut when not in use; or
- (c) held open by an automatic release mechanism.

Signs should be provided on both sides of the door except for doors to cupboards and service ducts which should be marked on the outside only.

The following fire doors do not require to be marked –

- (i) doors within dwellinghouses;
- (ii) doors to and within flats;
- (iii) bedroom doors in Purpose Group 2 buildings; and
- (iv) lift doors.

Provision of cavity barriers

- 4.36 To restrict the spread of smoke and flame through concealed spaces in the construction of a building, cavity barriers should be provided –
- (a) in a building of any purpose group –
 - (i) at the intersection of fire-resisting construction and an element containing a cavity as shown in Diagram 4.4; and
 - (ii) as set out in Table 4.6 for the appropriate purpose group of the building and the specified locations.

[Note – alternative arrangements for items 1, 3 and 4 are shown in Diagram 4.5 and for item 2 in Diagram 4.6. Notes (3) and (4) to Table 4.6 are supported by Diagrams 4.7 and 4.8 respectively]; and
 - (b) in a building of Purpose Group 2, 3, 4, 5, 6 or 7 – so that the maximum dimension of a cavity, (other than one described in paragraph 4.40 or 4.41) should be not greater than that given in Table 4.7 for the appropriate location of the cavity.
- 4.37 A cavity barrier should not be used above a compartment wall to complete the line of compartmentation, i.e. a compartment wall should be carried up to a compartment floor or to a roof.

Table 4.6 Provision of cavity barriers

Item	Cavity barriers to be provided	Purpose group to which the provision applies			
		1a	1b & c	2	3, 4, 5, 6 and 7
1	At the top of an external cavity wall and at the junction between an external cavity wall and a compartment wall that separates buildings, except where the external cavity complies with Diagram 4.5	✓	✓	✓	✓
2	Above ⁽¹⁾ the enclosures to a protected stairway in a dwellinghouse of three or more storeys (see Diagram 4.6) ⁽³⁾	N/A	✓	N/A	N/A
3	At the junction between an external cavity wall and every compartment floor and compartment wall, except where the external cavity wall complies with Diagram 4.5	✓	N/A	✓	✓
4	At the junction between a cavity wall and every compartment floor, compartment wall, or other wall or door assembly which forms a fire-resisting barrier, except where the external cavity wall complies with Diagram 4.5	✓	N/A	✓	✓
5	In a protected escape route, above ⁽¹⁾ and below any fire-resisting construction which is not carried full storey height ⁽²⁾ or (in the case of a top storey) to the underside of the roof covering ⁽³⁾	✓	N/A	✓	✓

Table 4.6 Provision of cavity barriers (cont'd)

Item	Cavity barriers to be provided	Purpose group to which the provision applies			
		1a	1b & c	2	3, 4, 5, 6 and 7
6	Above ⁽¹⁾ any bedroom partitions which are not carried full storey height ⁽²⁾ , or (in the case of a top storey) to the underside of the roof covering ⁽³⁾	N/A	N/A	✓	N/A
7	Above ⁽¹⁾ any corridor enclosures which are not carried full storey height ⁽²⁾ , or (in the case of a top storey) to the underside of the roof covering, where the corridor (which is not a protected corridor) is subdivided to prevent fire or smoke affecting two alternative escape routes simultaneously (see Section 2) ⁽⁴⁾	N/A	N/A	✓	✓
8	To subdivide any cavity (including any roof space) so that the distance between cavity barriers does not exceed the dimensions given in Table 4.7	N/A	N/A	✓	✓
9	Within the void behind the external face of rain screencladding at every floor level, and on the line of compartment walls abutting the external wall, of buildings which have a floor more than 18 m above ground level	✓	N/A	✓	N/A
10	At the edges of cavities (including around openings) ⁽⁵⁾	✓	✓	✓	✓

Notes:

✓ Provision applies.

N/A Not applicable.

(1) Above and in the same plane as the element.

(2) Full storey height means from structural floor slab to the underside of the structural floor above.

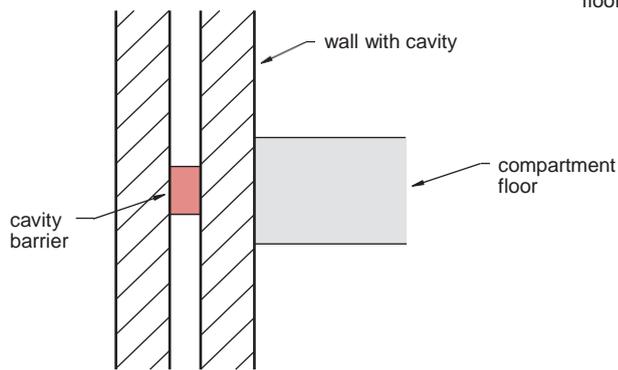
(3) The cavity barriers in items 2, 5 and 6 are not required where the cavity is enclosed on the lower side by a fire-resisting ceiling (as shown in Diagram 4.7) which extends throughout the building, compartment or separated part.

(4) The cavity barrier in item 7 is not required where the storey is subdivided by fire-resisting construction carried full storey height⁽²⁾ and passing through the line of subdivision of the corridor (see Diagram 4.8), or where the cavity is enclosed on the lower side as described in Note (3) above.

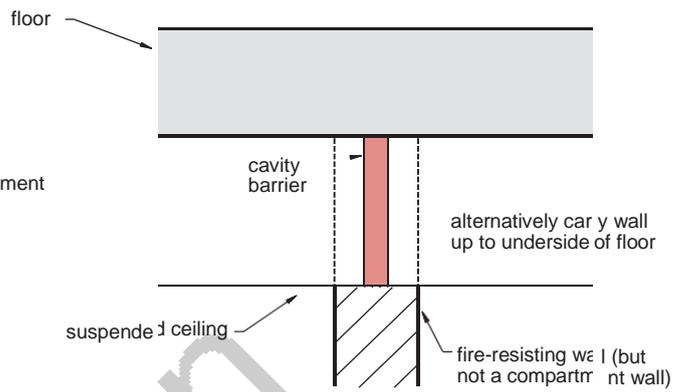
(5) Cavity barriers provided around window or door openings may be formed by window or door frames (see paragraph 4.38).

Diagram 4.4 Cavity barriers at intersections

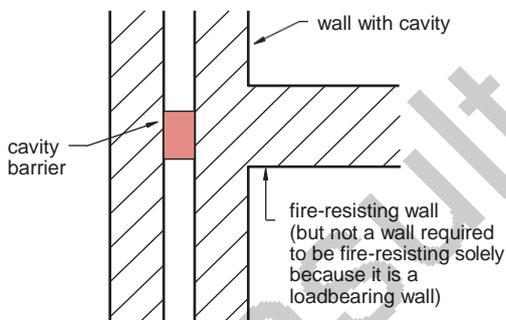
see para 4.36(a)



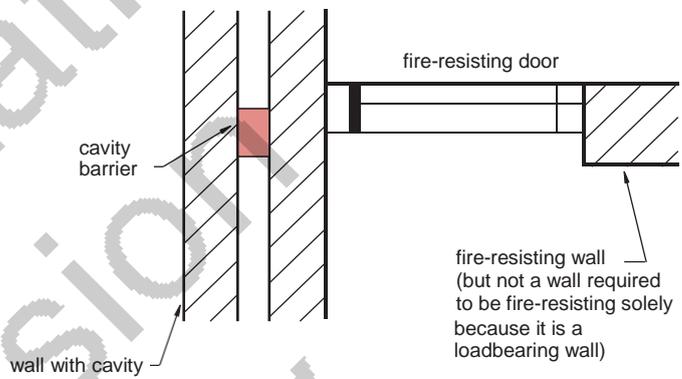
(a) Section



(b) Section



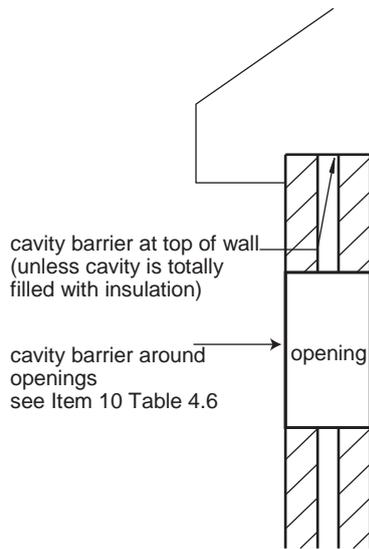
(c) Plan



(d) Plan

Diagram 4.5 Cavity walls excluded from certain provisions for cavity barriers

see para 4.35(a), 4.39(a) and Table 4.6 Items 1, & 4



Section

external cavity wall of two leaves of brick, block or concrete each at least 75 mm thick – cavity width 300 mm maximum

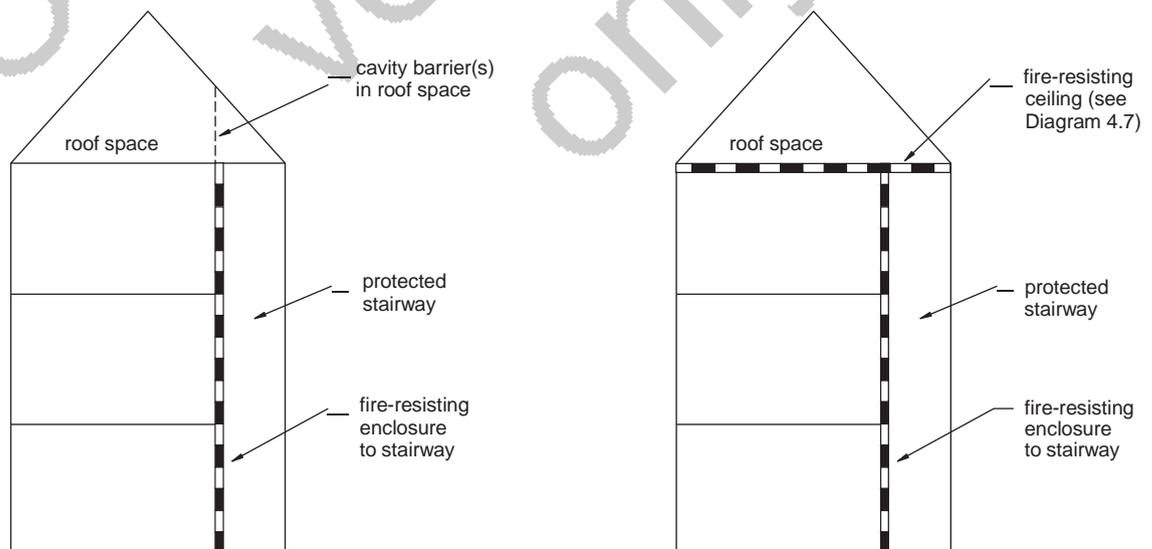
Notes:

Combustible material should not be placed in or exposed to the cavity except for –

- (a) timber lintels, window or door frames, or the ends of timber joists;
- (b) pipe, conduit or cable;
- (c) d.p.c., flashing, cavity closer or wall tie;
- (d) thermal insulating material; or
- (e) a domestic meter cupboard provided that – there are no more than two cupboards per dwelling; the opening in the outer wall leaf is not more than 800 mm x 500 mm for each cupboard; and the inner leaf is not penetrated except by a sleeve not more than 80 mm x 80 mm, which is fire-stopped.

Diagram 4.6 Alternative arrangement of cavity barriers in roof space over a protected stairway in a dwellinghouse of three or more storeys

see para 4.36(a) and Table 4.6 item 2

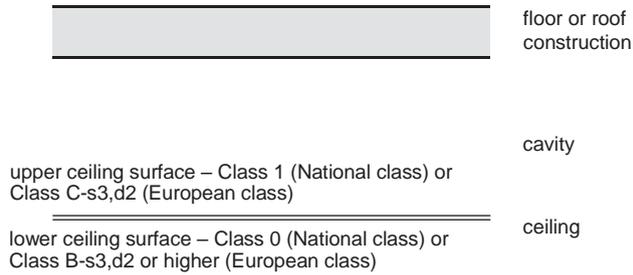


(a) With cavity barrier(s) as required by Table 4.6

(b) Alternative arrangement with fire-resisting ceiling

Diagram 4.7 Fire-resisting ceiling below a cavity

see para 4.36(a), 4.40(b), Table 4.6 note(3) and Diag. 4.6



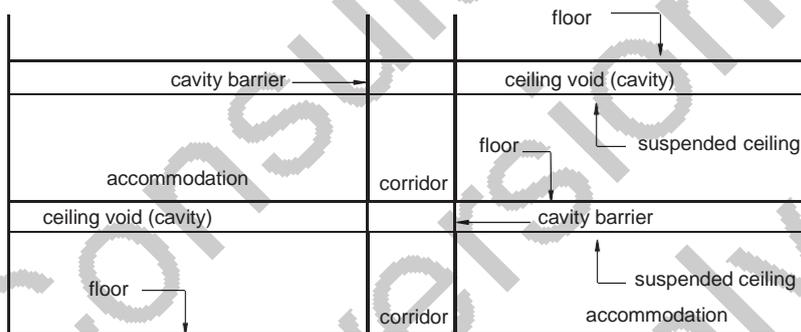
Note:

The ceiling should –

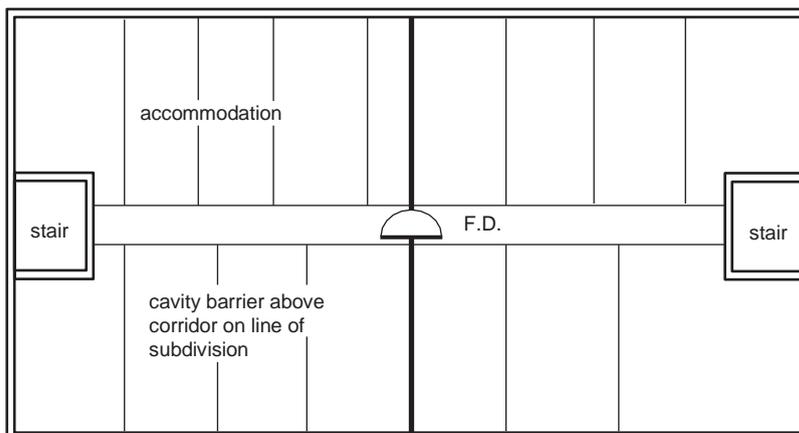
- (a) have at least 30 minutes fire resistance;
- (b) be imperforate except for an opening described in paragraph 4.42;
- (c) extend throughout the building or compartment; and
- (d) not be easily demountable.

Diagram 4.8 Alternative arrangements for corridor enclosure

see para 4.36(a) and Table 4.6 note(4)



(a) Section showing use of cavity barriers above the corridor enclosure as required by Table 4.6



(b) Alternative arrangement plan showing subdivision of the storey by fire-resisting construction [see Table 4.6, item 7 and note (4)]

the subdivision is carried full storey height and includes subdivision of the corridor.
a cavity barrier is used in the corridor ceiling void, over the corridor subdivision.

Key

- F.D. fire-resisting door
- fire-resisting construction

Construction of cavity barriers

- 4.38 A cavity barrier should be constructed to provide fire resistance of not less than 30 minutes in respect of integrity and 15 minutes in respect of insulation (see item 15 of Table 4.1), however, a cavity barrier in a stud partition or wall may be formed of –
- steel at least 0.5 mm thick;
 - timber at least 38 mm thick;
 - polyethylene sleeved mineral wool or mineral wool slab, in either case under compression when installed in the cavity; or
 - calcium silicate, cement based or gypsum based boards at least 12 mm thick.

A cavity barrier may be formed by any construction provided for another purpose if that construction meets the provisions for a cavity barrier.

- 4.39 A cavity barrier should be tightly fitted and fixed in position. Where this is not possible, e.g. in the case of a junction with slates or profiled sheeting, the junction should be fire-stopped in accordance with paragraphs 4.45 to 4.47.

The fixing of a cavity barrier should be such that the performance of the cavity barrier is unlikely to be made ineffective by –

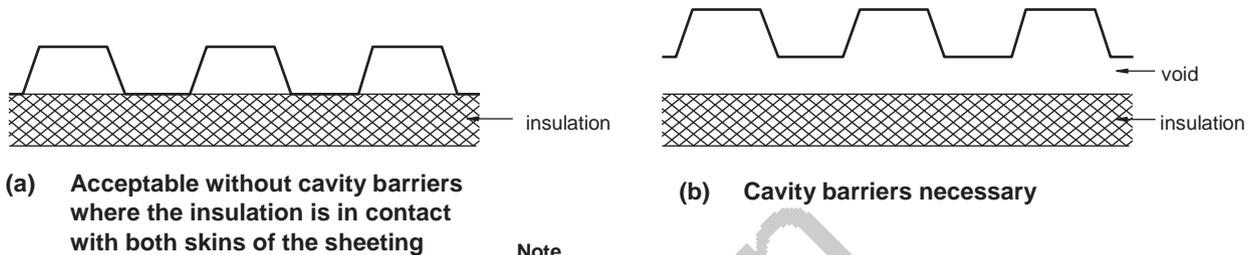
- the movement of the building due to subsidence, shrinkage or thermal change and movement of the external envelope due to wind;
- the collapse in a fire of any service which penetrates it;
- the failure in a fire of its fixings or supporting structure; and
- the failure in a fire of any material or construction which the cavity barrier abuts, e.g. if a cavity barrier is connected to a suspended ceiling, collapse of the ceiling should not cause premature failure of the cavity barrier.

Cavities not requiring subdivision

- 4.40 The provisions of paragraph 4.36(b) should not apply to a cavity which is –
- in a masonry or concrete external cavity wall complying with Diagram 4.5;
 - in a floor void or in a roof void where the cavity does not exceed 30 m in extent and is enclosed on its lower side by a fire-resisting ceiling (complying with Diagram 4.7) which extends throughout the building or compartment;
 - below a floor next to the ground where the cavity is not greater than 1 m in height or is not normally accessible by people. However, this should not apply where there is any opening in the floor such that it is possible for combustible material to accumulate in the cavity (in this case cavity barriers and access for cleaning should be provided);
 - formed behind the external skin in rain-screen external wall construction, or by over-cladding an existing masonry or concrete external wall or an existing concrete roof, provided that the cavity does not contain combustible insulation and the provisions of Table 4.6 Item 9 are complied with; and

Diagram 4.9 Provision of cavity barriers in double-skinned profiled insulated roof sheeting

see para 4.40(e)



Note

See paragraph 4.21 regarding the provision of a firebreak at the junction of a double skinned insulated roof and a compartment wall.

- (e) between double-skinned, profiled, insulated, roof sheeting provided that –
- (i) the sheeting is a material of limited combustibility;
 - (ii) both surfaces of the insulation layer have a surface spread of flame classification not lower than Class 1 (National class) or Class C-s3,d2 (European class); and
 - (iii) the insulation is in contact with the inner and outer skins of sheeting as shown in Diagram 4.9(a).

4.41 Where the cavity is over an undivided room which –

- (a) exceeds the appropriate maximum dimension for a cavity in Table 4.7, cavity barriers need only be provided on the line of the enclosing walls of that room, provided that they are not more than 40 m apart and that the surfaces exposed in the cavity are not lower than Class 1 (National class) or Class C-s3,d2 (European class); or
- (b) exceeds 40 m (in either direction on plan), cavity barriers need not be provided where –
 - (i) the room and the cavity together are compartmented from the rest of the building;
 - (ii) an automatic fire detection and fire alarm system complying with BS 5839-1 is fitted in the building;
 - (iii) the surface of the ceiling exposed in the cavity is of Class 0 (National class) or Class B-s3,d2 or higher (European class) and the ceiling supports and fixings in the cavity are of non-combustible construction;
 - (iv) the surface spread of flame classification of any pipe insulation in the cavity is not lower than Class 1 (National class) or Class C-s3,d2 (European class);
 - (v) any electrical wiring in the cavity is laid in metal trays or in metal conduit;

Table 4.7 Maximum dimension of a cavity in Purpose Group 2, 3, 4, 5, 6 and 7 buildings ⁽¹⁾

Location of cavity	Class of surface exposed in cavity (excluding surface of any pipe, cable or conduit, or insulation to any pipe)		Maximum dimension of a cavity in any direction (m)
	National class ⁽²⁾	European ⁽²⁾⁽³⁾ class	
Between a roof and a ceiling	Any	Any	20
Any other cavity	Class 0 or Class 1	Class A1; Class A2-s3,d2; Class B-s3,d2; or Class C-s3,d2	20
	A class other than Class 0 or Class 1	A class other than any of the classes in the row above	10

Notes :

- (1) Exceptions to these provisions are given in paragraphs 4.40 and 4.41.
- (2) The National classifications do not automatically equate with the equivalent classifications in the European column, therefore products cannot typically assume a European class unless they have been tested accordingly.
- (3) Where a classification includes 's3,d2' this means that there is no limit set for smoke production and/or flaming droplets/particles.

(vi) any other material in the cavity is a material of limited combustibility; and

(vii) where the cavity is used as a plenum – the recommendations of BS 5588-9 in relation to recirculating air distribution systems are complied with.

Openings in cavity barriers

- 4.42 There should be no openings in a cavity barrier other than those for –
- a fire door which has not less than 30 minutes fire resistance and complies with paragraphs 4.29 to 4.35;
 - the passage of a pipe which complies with paragraph 4.43;
 - the passage of a cable, a conduit or tray containing one or more cables;
 - an opening fitted with a suitably mounted automatic fire damper; and
 - a duct which (unless it is fire-resisting) is fitted with a suitably mounted automatic fire damper where it passes through the cavity barrier.

Pipes penetrating fire separating elements

- 4.43 Where a pipe passes through a fire separating element it should be –
- (a) provided with a suitable proprietary sealing system which has been shown by test to maintain the fire resistance of the fire separating element; or
 - (b) where a proprietary sealing system is not used –
 - (i) of a diameter not more than the relevant nominal internal diameter given in Table 4.8, with the opening as small as is practicable and fire-stopped around the pipe; or
 - (ii) of lead, aluminium, aluminium alloy, fibre-cement or uPVC, having a maximum internal diameter not more than 160 mm and be within a non-combustible sleeve [see Table 4.8 Note (1)] as shown in Diagram 4.10.

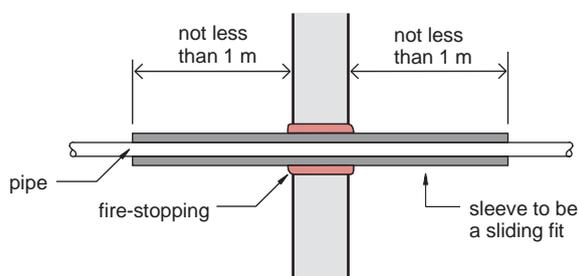
Ventilation ducts penetrating fire separating elements

- 4.44 Where a ventilation or air conditioning duct passes through a fire separating element it should comply with an appropriate method for maintaining the fire resistance of the wall, floor or barrier given in BS 5588-9.

Fire dampers should be tested to BS EN 1366-2 and be classified to BS EN 13501-3. They should have an E classification not less than 60 minutes. Fire and smoke dampers should also be tested to BS EN 1366-2 and be classified to BS EN 13501-3. They should have an ES classification not less than 60 minutes.

Diagram 4.10 Pipes penetrating fire separating elements

see para 4.42(b)



Note:

The opening in the construction to be as small as practicable with fire-stopping between sleeve and construction.

Table 4.8 Maximum nominal internal diameter of pipes passing through fire separating elements

Situation	Pipe material and maximum nominal internal diameter (mm)		
	Non-combustible material ⁽¹⁾	Lead, aluminium, aluminium alloy, uPVC ⁽²⁾ , fibre-cement	Any other material
1 Construction (but not a wall separating buildings) enclosing a protected shaft which is not a stairway or a lift shaft	160	110	40
2 (a) A wall separating dwellinghouses (b) A compartment wall or compartment floor between flats	160	160 (stack pipe) ⁽³⁾ 110 (branch pipe) ⁽³⁾	40
3 Any other situation	160	40	40

Notes:

- (1) A non-combustible material (such as cast iron, copper or steel) which if exposed to a temperature of 800°C, will not soften or fracture to the extent that flame or hot gas will pass through the wall of the pipe.
- (2) uPVC pipes complying with either BS 4514 or BS 5255 or BS EN 1329-1.
- (3) These diameters are only in relation to pipes forming part of an above-ground drainage system which is enclosed as shown in Diagram 4.11. In other cases the maximum diameters against Situation 3 apply.

Fire-stopping

- 4.45 In addition to any other provision in this Technical Booklet for fire-stopping, fire-stopping should be provided at –
- (a) all joints and imperfections of fit between elements which serve as a barrier to the passage of fire; and
 - (b) all openings for pipes, ducts, cables, conduits or trays which pass through any fire separating element, and such openings should be –
 - (i) as few in number as possible; and
 - (ii) as small as is practicable.
- 4.46 To prevent the displacement of fire-stopping it should be supported by, or reinforced with, a material of limited combustibility –
- (a) where it is a non-rigid material (unless it has been shown by test not to require such support or reinforcement); and
 - (b) in all locations where its unsupported span is more than 100 mm.
- 4.47 In addition to proprietary fire-stopping and sealing systems, which have been shown by test to be suitable, the following materials may be suitable as fire-stopping in situations appropriate to the particular material –

- (i) cement mortar;
- (ii) gypsum based plaster;
- (iii) cement or gypsum based vermiculite/perlite mixes;
- (iv) glass fibre, crushed rock, blast furnace slag or ceramic based products (with or without resin binders); and
- (v) intumescent mastics.

Flues and heating appliance ventilation ducts penetrating compartment walls and compartment floors

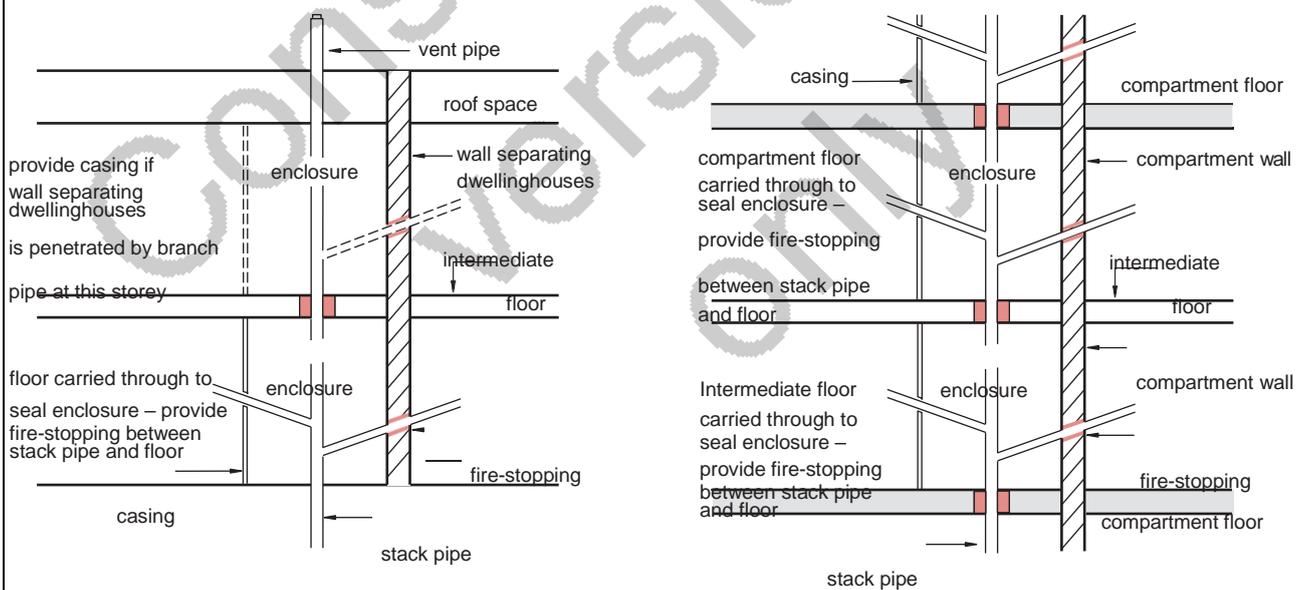
4.48 Where a flue, a duct containing more than one flue, or an appliance ventilation duct –

- (a) passes through a compartment floor or compartment wall; or
- (b) is built into a compartment wall,

the walls enclosing the flue or duct should have a period of fire resistance of not less than half that required for the compartment wall or compartment floor and be of non-combustible construction, as shown in Diagram 4.12.

Diagram 4.11 Enclosure for drainage or water supply pipes

see Table 4.8 note (3)



(a) Dwellinghouse with any number of storeys

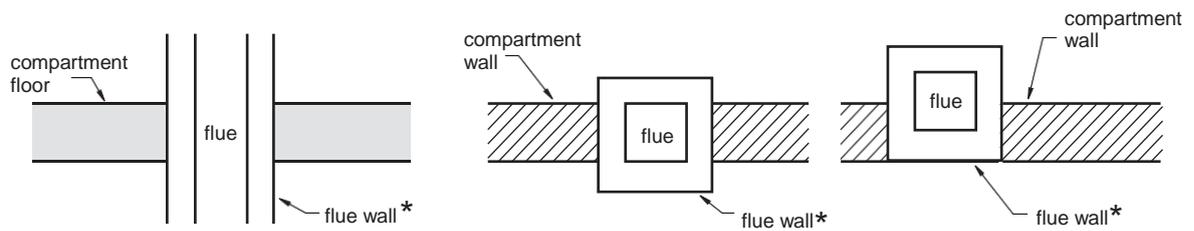
(b) Other buildings

Notes:

- 1 The enclosure should –
 - (a) be bounded by a compartment wall or floor, an outside wall, an intermediate floor or a casing [see specification at (2)];
 - (b) have internal surfaces (except framing members) of Class 0 (National class) or Class B-s3,d2 or higher (European class);
 - (c) not have an access panel which opens into a circulation space or a bedroom; and
 - (d) be used only for drainage, water supply or vent pipes for a drainage system.
- 2 The casing should –
 - (a) be impermeate except for an opening for a pipe or an access panel;
 - (b) not be of sheet metal; and
 - (c) have (including any access panel) not less than 30 minutes fire resistance.
- 3 The opening for a pipe, either in the structure or the casing, should be as small as possible and fire-stopped around the pipe.

Diagram 4.12 Flues in compartment walls and compartment floors

see para 4.48



(a) Section of flue passing through a compartment floor

(b) Plans of flues built into compartment wall

Note:

- * In all cases flue walls should have a fire resistance of at least one half of that required for the compartment wall or compartment floor and be of non-combustible construction.

Car parks for light vehicles

- 4.49 All materials used in the construction of a building, separated part or compartment used for car parking should be non-combustible other than –
- (a) a surface finish which meets the relevant provisions of Sections 3 and 5 which –
 - (i) is applied to a floor or roof of the car park; and
 - (ii) is applied within any adjoining building, separated part or compartment – to the structure enclosing the car park;
 - (b) a fire door;
 - (c) an attendant's kiosk which does not exceed 15 m² in area; and
 - (d) any shop mobility facility which does not exceed 30 m² in floor area.

Open-sided car parks

- 4.50 A car park may be regarded as an open-sided car park for the purposes of Table 4.2 [i.e. Purpose Group 7(b)(i)] where, in addition to complying with paragraph 4.49 –
- (a) it has no basement storeys;
 - (b) it is naturally ventilated by permanent openings, at each car parking level, having an aggregate ventilation area of not less than 5% of the floor area at that level, with not less than half that ventilation area equally divided in two opposing walls and distributed to provide effective cross-ventilation; and
 - (c) where the building is also used for any other purpose – that part forming the car park is a separated part.

Car parks which are not open-sided

- 4.51 Where a car park does not comply with the provisions of paragraph 4.50 it should not be regarded as open-sided for the purposes of Table 4.2 [i.e. it falls in Purpose Group 7(b)(ii)]. However, there is a need for ventilation in such a car park, therefore in addition to the provisions of paragraph 4.49 it should have either –
- (a) natural ventilation at each storey –
 - (i) by permanent openings at each car parking level, having an aggregate ventilation area of not less than 2.5% of the floor area at that level, with not less than half that ventilation area equally divided in two opposing walls and distributed to provide effective cross-ventilation; or
 - (ii) by suitable vents at ceiling level on each car parking level having an aggregate area of permanent opening not less than 2.5% of the floor area and so arranged as to have a through flow of air; or

(b) a system of mechanical ventilation where –

- (i) the system is independent of any other ventilation system and designed to operate at 6 air changes per hour for normal extraction and at 10 air changes per hour in a fire condition;
- (ii) the system is designed to operate in two parts, each capable of extracting 50% of the rates set out in (i) above and designed so that each part may operate singly or simultaneously; each part of the system should have an independent power supply which will operate in the event of failure of the main supply;
- (iii) extract points are arranged so that 50% are at high level and 50% at low level; and
- (iv) the fans are rated to run at 300°C for not less than 60 minutes, and the ductwork and fixings are constructed of materials having a melting point of not less than 800°C.

(See Technical Booklet K for guidance on normal ventilation of car parks.)

Consultation
Version
only

Shopping complexes

- 4.52 Whilst the provisions in this Technical Booklet about shops should generally be capable of application in cases where a shop is contained in a single separated building, the provisions may not be appropriate where a shop forms part of a complex. These may include covered malls providing access to a number of shops and common servicing areas. In particular, the provisions about maximum compartment size may be difficult to meet, bearing in mind that it would generally not be practical to compartment a shop from a mall serving it. (To a lesser extent, the provisions about fire resistance, walls separating shop units, surfaces and boundary distances may also pose problems.)
- 4.53 To ensure a satisfactory standard of fire safety in shopping complexes, alternative measures and additional compensatory features to the provisions set out in this Section are needed. Such features are set out in Sections 5 and 6 of BS 5588-10 and the relevant recommendations of those sections should be followed.

Consultation
Version
only

Insulating core panels used for internal structures

- 4.54 Insulating core panel systems are used for external cladding as well as for internal structures. However, whilst both types of panel system have unique fire behaviour characteristics, it is those used for internal structures that can present particular problems with regard to fire spread.

The most common use of insulating core panels, when used for internal structures, is to provide an enclosure in which a chilled or sub zero environment can be generated for the production, preservation, storage and distribution of perishable foodstuffs. However, this type of construction is also used in many other applications, particularly where the maintenance of a hygienic environment is essential.

These panels typically consist of an inner core sandwiched between, and bonded to facings of galvanised steel, often with a PVC facing for hygiene purposes. The panels are then formed into a structure by jointing systems, usually designed to provide an insulating and hygienic performance. The panel structure can be free standing, but is usually attached to the building structure by lightweight fixings or hangers in the case of ceilings.

The most common forms of insulation in present use are polyisocyanurate, mineral fibre, phenolic, polystyrene (cold stores), extruded polystyrene and composite polymers such as syntactic phenolic.

Fire behaviour of the core materials and fixing systems

- 4.55 The degradation of polymeric materials can be expected when exposed to radiated/conducted heat from a fire, with the resulting production of large quantities of smoke. It is recognised that the potential for problems in fires involving mineral fibre cores is less than those for polymeric core materials.

In addition, irrespective of the type of core material, the panel, when exposed to the high temperatures of a developed fire, will tend to delaminate between the facing and core material, due to a combination of expansion of the metal facing and softening of the bond line.

Therefore once it is involved, either directly or indirectly in a fire, the panel will have lost most of its structural integrity. Stability will then be dependant on the method of fixing to the structure. For systems that are not fixed through both facings the stability of the system will then depend on the residual structural strength of the non-exposed facing, the interlocking joint between panels and the fixing system.

Most jointing or fixing systems for these systems have an extremely limited structural integrity performance in developed fire conditions. If the fire starts to heat up the support fixings or structure to which they are attached, then there is a real chance of total collapse of the panel system.

Where panels are used as the lining to a building the insulating nature of these panels, together with their sealed joints, means that fire can spread behind the panels, hidden from the occupants of occupied rooms/spaces. With some thermoplastic cores fire can also spread between the panel facings.

This can prove to be a particular problem to firefighters as, due to the insulating properties of the cores, it may not be possible to track the spread of fire, even using infra red detection equipment. This difficulty, together with that of controlling the fire spread within and behind the panels, is likely to have a detrimental effect on the performance of the fixing systems, potentially leading to their complete and unexpected collapse, together with any associated equipment.

Firefighting

4.56 When compared with other types of construction techniques, these panel systems therefore provide a unique combination of problems for firefighters, including –

- (a) hidden fire spread within panels with thermoplastic cores;
- (b) production of large quantities of black toxic smoke and rapid fire spread leading to flashover; and
- (c) hidden fire behind lining systems.

These three characteristics are common to both polyurethane and polystyrene cored panels, although the rate of fire spread in polyurethane cores is significantly less than that of polystyrene cores, especially when any external heat source is removed.

In addition, irrespective of the type of panel core, all systems are susceptible to delamination of the steel facing, collapse of the system and hidden fire spread behind the system.

Design recommendations

4.57 To identify the appropriate solution, a risk assessment approach should be adopted. This would involve identifying the potential fire risk within the enclosures formed by the panel systems and then adopting one or more of the following at the design stage –

- (a) removing the risk;
- (b) separating the risk from the panels by an appropriate distance;
- (c) providing a fire suppression system for the risk;
- (d) providing a fire suppression system for the enclosure;
- (e) providing fire-resisting panels; and
- (f) specifying appropriate materials/fixing and jointing systems.

In summary the performance of the building structure, including the insulating envelope, the superstructure, the substructure, etc., must be considered in relation to their performance in the event of a fire.

Specifying panel core materials

4.58 Where at all possible the specification of panels with core materials appropriate to the application will help ensure an acceptable level of performance for panel systems, when involved in fire conditions. The following are examples in the provision of core materials which may be appropriate to the application concerned–

(a) Mineral fibre cores – cooking areas, hot areas, bakeries, fire breaks in combustible panels, fire stop panels and general fire protection.

(b) All cores – chill stores, cold stores, blast freezers, food factories and clean rooms.

Note – Core materials may be used in other circumstances where a risk assessment has been made and other appropriate fire precautions have been put in place.

Specifying materials/fixing and jointing systems

4.59 The following are methods by which the stability of panel systems may be improved in the event of a fire, although they may not all be appropriate in every case.

(a) Insulating envelopes, support systems, and supporting structure should be designed to allow the envelope to remain structurally stable by alternative means such as catenary action following failure of the bond line between insulant core and facing materials. This particularly relates to ceilings and will typically require positive attachment of the lower faces of the insulant panels to supports.

(b) The building superstructure, together with any elements providing support to the insulating envelope, should be protected to prevent early collapse of the structure or the envelope.

Note – Irrespective of the type of panel provided, it will remain necessary to ensure that the supplementary support method supporting the panels remains stable for an appropriate time period under fire conditions. It is not practical to fire protect light gauge steel members such as purlins and sheeting rails which provide stability to building superstructures and these may be compromised at an early stage of a fire. Supplementary fire-protected heavier gauge steelwork members could be provided at wider intervals than purlins to provide restraint in the event of a fire.

(c) In designated high risk areas, consideration should be given to incorporating non-combustible insulant cored panels into wall and ceiling construction at intervals, or incorporating strips of non-combustible material into specified wall and ceiling panels, in order to provide a barrier to fire propagation through the insulant.

(d) Correct detailing of the insulating envelope should ensure that the combustible insulant is fully encapsulated by non-combustible facing materials which remain in place during a fire.

(e) The panels should incorporate pre-finished and sealed areas for penetration of services.

In addition, the details of construction of the insulating envelope should, particularly in relation to combustible insulant cores, prevent the core materials from becoming exposed to the fire and contributing to the fire load.

General

- 4.60 Generally panels or panel systems should not be used to support machinery or other permanent loads.

Any cavity created by the arrangement of panels, their supporting structure or other building elements should be provided with suitable cavity barriers.

Examples of possible solutions and general guidance on insulating core panels construction can be found in the relevant chapters of the *Design, construction, specification and fire management of insulated envelopes for temperature controlled environments* published by the International Association of Cold Storage Contractors (European Division).

Consultation
Version
only

Section 5 External fire spread

- 5.1 This Section contains provisions relating to the design and construction of –
- ~~(a) external walls – in order that the risk of ignition from an external source, the spread of flame over the external surface and the spread of fire from one building to another are restricted; and~~
 - (a) external walls in order that –
 - (i) the risk of ignition from an external source to the outside surface of a building; and, the spread of flame over the external surface is restricted; and
 - (ii) the materials used to construct external walls and attachments to them and how they are assembled do not contribute to the rate of fire spread up the outside of a building; and
 - (iii) the spread of fire from one building to another are is restricted; and
 - (b) roofs – in order that the risk of spread of flame and of fire penetration from an external source are restricted.

Construction of external walls

Fire resistance of external walls

- 5.2 The external walls of a building are elements of structure and other than those areas which may be unprotected (as determined in accordance with paragraphs 5.10 to 5.12) should have the appropriate period of fire resistance given in Section 4.

Combustibility of external walls

- 5.2A The external walls of a building should not provide a medium for fire spread if that is likely to be a risk to health and safety. Combustible materials, cavities in external walls and attachments to external walls can present such a risk, particularly in tall buildings. The guidance in this section is designed to reduce the risk of vertical fire spread in all buildings and the risk of ignition from flames coming from adjacent buildings.
- 5.2 B The external walls of buildings other than those described in Regulation 23(4) of the Building Regulations should achieve either of the following –
- (a) follow all the provisions given in paragraphs 5.3 to 5.4C which provide guidance on all of the following –
 - (i) external surfaces;
 - (ii) materials and products; and
 - (iii) cavities and cavity barriers; or
 - (b) meet all the performance criteria given in the BRE Report Fire performance of external thermal insulation for walls of multistorey buildings (BR 135) for external walls using full-scale test data from BS 8414-1 or BS 8414-2.

External Surfaces

- 5.3 The external surface of a wall (i.e. outermost external material) of a building of any height or use should meet the requirements given in ~~Table 5.1~~ **Table 5.1A** relevant to the height of the building and the distance between the building and the relevant boundary. ~~The provisions of Table 5.1 are illustrated in Diagram 5.1.~~

In the case of the external wall being of “rainscreen” construction (i.e. an outer cladding with a drained and ventilated cavity behind) the surface of the outer cladding which faces the cavity should also meet the relevant requirements of ~~Table 5.1~~ **Table 5.1A**.

Materials and Products

- 5.4 ~~Where a building has a storey the floor of which is 18 m or more above ground level, any materials used for supporting cladding and any insulation material incorporated within the wall construction (other than a masonry cavity wall complying with Diagram 4.5) should be a material of limited combustibility. [Advice on the incorporation of thermal insulation in such walls is given in Building Research Establishment Report – *Fire performance of external thermal insulation for walls of multi-storey buildings* (BR 135: 1988).]~~

~~Where a building has a storey the floor of which is 18 m or more above ground level, any cladding materials, materials used for supporting cladding, insulation material, and any filler material (such as the core materials of metal composite panels, sandwich panels and window spandrel panels but not including gaskets, sealants and similar) etc. incorporated within the external wall construction should be a material of limited combustibility or better (see paragraphs 1.9 and 1.10). This restriction does not apply to masonry cavity wall construction which complies with Diagram 4.5 in Section 4. Where Regulation 23(2) applies, that regulation prevails over all the provisions in this paragraph.~~

- 5.4A In relation to buildings of any height or use, in order to comply with regulation 36, consideration should be given to the choice of material or product used for the external wall, or attachments to the wall, to reduce the risk of fire spread over the wall. For buildings with a top storey less than 18m, the person carrying out the work should demonstrate how adequate consideration has been given to the requirement of regulation 36. Factors to consider may include -
- the way materials are arranged and their extent of use on the building;
 - the combustibility of the materials involved;
 - the proximity of the materials to escape routes;
 - the evacuation strategy for the building;
 - previous fire incidents involving the combustible material in use; and
 - particular attention to attachments such as balconies to the building.

Note 1: Best practice guidance for green walls (also called living walls) can be found in Fire performance of Green Roofs and Walls.

5.4B **Cavities and cavity barriers**

Cavity barriers should be provided in accordance with paragraphs 4.36 to 4.42.

5.4C In the case of an external wall construction, of a building which, by virtue of paragraph 4.40(d) (external cladding system with a masonry or concrete inner leaf), is not subject to the provisions of Table 4.7, the surfaces which face into cavities should also meet the provisions of 5.1A, and provisions for cavity barriers in Section 4, but where Regulation 23(2) applies, that regulation prevails over guidance provided

5.5 **Portal frames**

Frequently, the provisions of Section 4 do not require the portal frames of a single storey building to have fire resistance except where the column members of those frames are within, or support, an external wall, which under paragraph 5.2, is required to have fire resistance. Where this occurs both the column and rafter members should have fire resistance, as the moment-resisting connections mean the portal frame acts as a single element. However, in the case of a steel portal frame which has been designed in accordance with the method set out in Fire and steel construction: *Single Storey Steel Framed Buildings in Fire Boundary Conditions*, only those members within or supporting an external wall requiring fire resistance, need have fire resistance.

Consultation
Version only

Table 5.1A (New) Reaction to fire performance of external surface of walls

Building Type	Building height	Less than 1m from the relevant boundary	1m or more from the relevant boundary
'Relevant buildings' as defined in regulation 23(4)		Class A2-s1,d0(1) or better	Class A2-s1, d0(1) or better
Assembly and recreation	More than 18m	Class B-s3, d2(2) or better	From ground level to 18m: class C-s3, d2(3) or better From 18m in height and above: class B-s3, d2(2) or better
	18m or less	Class B-s3,d2(2) or better	Up to 10m above ground level: class C-s3,d2(3) or better Up to 10m above a roof or any part of the building to which the public have access: class C-s3, d2(3) or better(4) From 10m in height and above: no minimum performance
Any other building	More than 18m	Class B-s3, d2(2) or better	From ground level to 18m: class C-s3, d2(3) or better From 18m in height and above: class B-s3, d2(2) or better
	18m or less	Class B-s3, d2(2) or better	No provisions

Notes:

In addition to the requirements within this table, buildings with a top occupied storey above 18m should also meet the provisions of paragraph 5.4.

In all cases, the advice in paragraph 5.4A should be followed.

(1) The restrictions for these buildings apply to all the materials used in the external wall and specified attachments (see paragraphs 5.5A to 5.5D for further guidance).

(2) Profiled or flat steel sheet at least 0.5mm thick with an organic coating of no more than 0.2mm thickness is also acceptable.

(3) Timber cladding at least 9mm thick is also acceptable.

(4) 10m is measured from the top surface of the roof.

Table 5.1—Provisions for external surfaces of walls

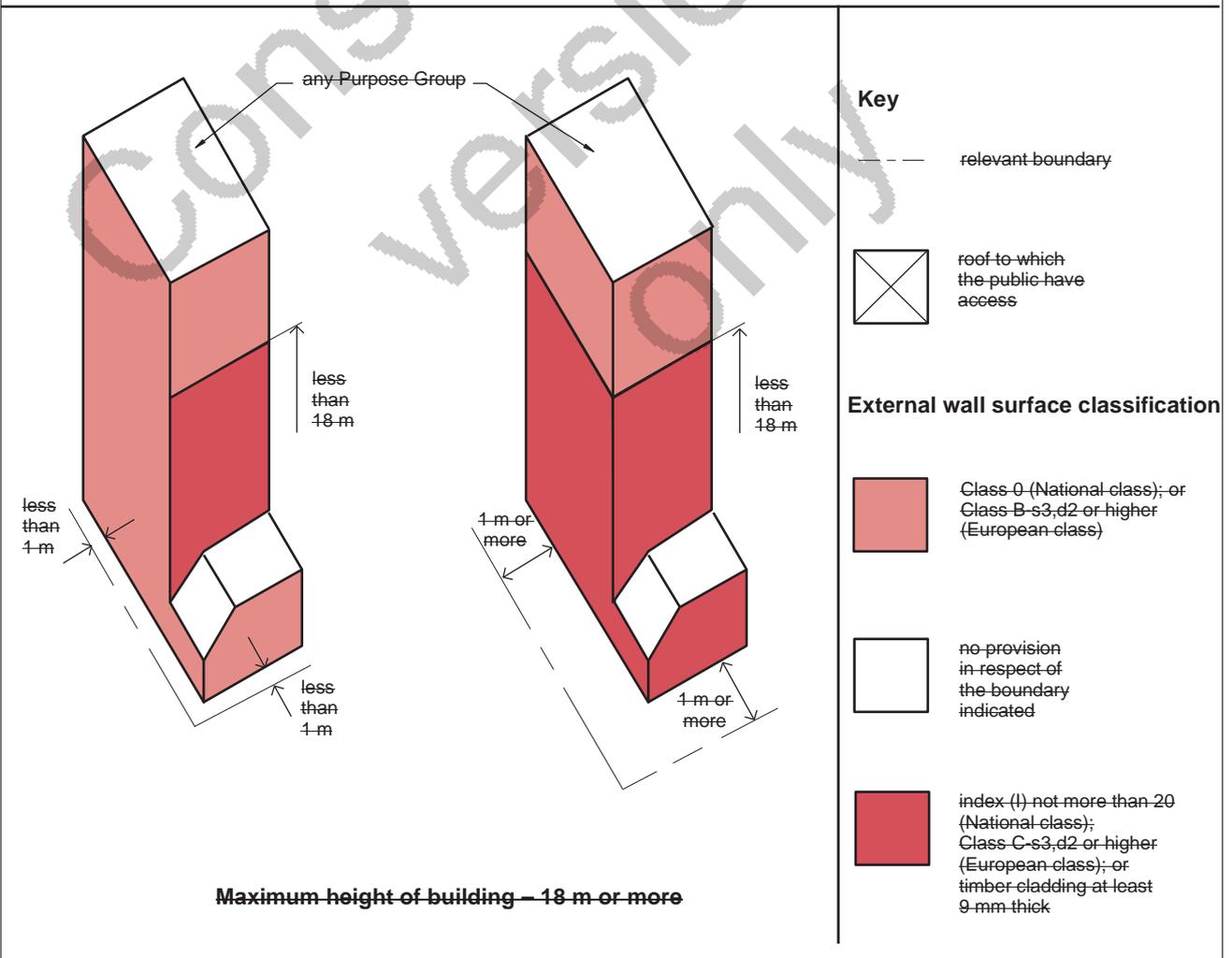
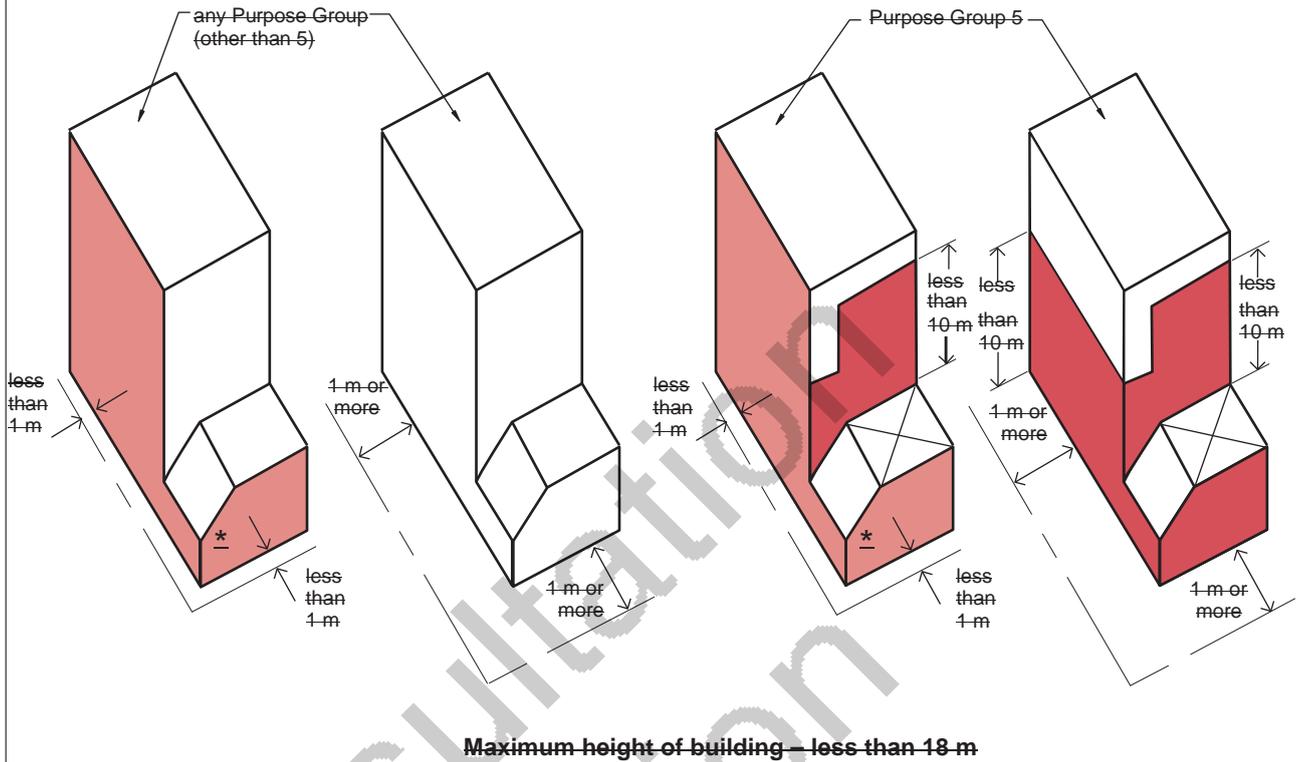
Maximum height of building (m)	Distance of wall from any point on the relevant boundary	
	Less than 1 m	1 m or more
Less than 18	Class 0 (National class) or Class B-s3,d2 or higher (European class)	(a) Purpose Group 5—no requirement other than as described in Note 1 (b) All other purpose groups—no requirement
18 or more	Class 0 (National class) or Class B-s3,d2 or higher (European class)	(a) Surfaces 18 m or more above ground level—Class 0 (National class) or Class B-s3,d2 or higher (European class) (b) Surfaces less than 18 m above ground level—see Note 2

Notes:

1. In a Purpose Group 5 building of more than one storey any part of a wall which is less than 10 m above—
 (a) the ground;
 (b) a roof to which the public have access; or
 (c) any other part of the building to which the public have access,
 should have an index of performance (I) of not more than 20 when tested to BS 476: Part 6 (National class); have a classification of Class C-s3,d2 or higher (European class) surface; or be timber cladding at least 9 mm thick.
2. Surfaces less than 18 m above the ground should be of a material which has an index of performance (I) of not more than 20 when tested to BS 476: Part 6 (National class); be of a classification Class C-s3,d2 (European class) or higher; or be timber cladding at least 9 mm thick.
3. The National classifications do not automatically equate with the equivalent European classifications, therefore products cannot typically assume a European class unless they have been tested accordingly.
4. When a classification includes 's3,d2', this means that there is no limit set for smoke production and/or flaming droplets/particles.

Diagram 5.1 Provisions for external surfaces of walls

see para 5.3



Key

--- relevant boundary

 roof to which the public have access

External wall surface classification

 Class 0 (National class); or Class B-s3,d2 or higher (European class)

 no provision in respect of the boundary indicated

 index (I) not more than 20 (National class); Class C-s3,d2 or higher (European class); or timber cladding at least 9 mm thick

Regulation 23(2)

Materials

- 5.5A Regulation 23(1) requires that materials used in building work are appropriate for the circumstances in which they are used. Regulation 23(2) sets requirements in respect of external walls and specified attachments in relevant buildings.

Note: Guidance on Regulation 23(1) can be found in Technical Booklet B.

- 5.5B Regulation 23(2) applies to any building with a storey at least 18m above ground level and which contains one or more dwellings; an institution; or a room for residential purposes (excluding any room in a hostel, hotel or a boarding house). It requires that all materials which become part of an external wall or specified attachment achieve European Class A2-s1, d0 or Class A1, other than those exempted by Regulation 23(3).

Note 1: The above includes any building that contains a flat, student accommodation, care homes, nursing homes, sheltered housing, hospitals and dormitories in boarding schools.

Note 2: The requirement in Regulation 23(2) is limited to materials achieving European classification Class A2-s1, d0 or Class A1. Therefore materials achieving limited combustibility cannot be deemed to meet the requirement using an alternative classification method.

- 5.5C External walls and specified attachments are defined in Regulation 22 and these definitions include any parts of the external wall as well as balconies, solar panels and sun shading.

- 5.5D Regulation 23(3) provides an exemption for certain components found in external walls and specified attachments.

Material change of use

- 5.5E Regulation 8 provides that, where the use of a building is changed such that the building becomes a building described in Regulation 23(4), the construction of the external walls, and specified attachments must be investigated and where necessary work must be carried out to ensure they only contain materials achieving European Class A2-s1, d0 or Class A1, other than those exempted by Regulation 23(3).

Further considerations for relevant buildings

- 5.5F The provisions of Regulation 23 apply in addition to the requirements of regulation 36. Therefore for buildings described in Regulation 23(4), the potential impact of any products incorporated into or onto the external walls should be carefully considered with regard to their number, size, orientation and position. Particular attention is drawn to the following points–
- (a) membranes used as part of the external wall construction should achieve a minimum classification of European Class B-s3, d0;
 - (b) internal linings should comply with the guidance provided in section 3.
 - (c) any part of a roof should achieve the minimum performance as detailed in section 5;

-
- (d) as per regulation 23(3), window frames and glass (including laminated glass) are exempted from regulation 23(2). Window spandrel panels and infill panels must comply with regulation 23(2);
 - (e) thermal breaks are small elements used as part of the external wall construction to restrict thermal bridging. There is no minimum performance for these materials. However, they should not span two compartments and should be limited in size to the minimum required to restrict the thermal bridging (the principal insulation layer is not to be regarded as a thermal break);
 - (f) regulation 23(2) only applies to specified attachments. Shop front signs and similar attachments are not covered by the requirements of regulation 23(2), although attention is drawn to paragraph (g); and
 - (g) whilst regulation 23(2) applies to materials which become part of an external wall or specified attachment, consideration should be given to other attachments to the wall which could impact on the risk of fire spread over the wall.

Consultation
Version
only

Space separation – External walls

5.6 Protection against the external spread of fire from one building to another is related to –

- (i) the distance between a building and each of its relevant boundaries (see paragraph 5.9); and
- (ii) the extent of the unprotected area in the side of the building which faces that boundary.

The basic provisions are outlined in paragraph 5.13 and methods of meeting those provisions are given in paragraphs 5.14 to 5.19.

The provisions are based on a number of assumptions, and whilst some of these may differ from the circumstances of a particular case, together they enable a reasonable standard of space separation to be achieved.

The provisions limit the extent of openings and other unprotected areas in the sides of a building (including areas with a combustible surface) which would not give adequate protection against the external spread of fire from one building to another.

The assumptions for establishing space separation are –

- (a) that the fire will involve a complete compartment but will not spread to other compartments;
- (b) that the intensity of a fire is related to the use of the building and will be moderated by a sprinkler system where it is provided;
- (c) that a building, which has an identical elevation, is located on the opposite side of, and at the same distance from, the relevant boundary; and
- (d) that radiation from that part of the external wall, which has the fire resistance required by Section 4, is discounted unless its external surface is combustible as described in paragraph 5.10.

5.7 Where a reduced separation distance is desired it may be advantageous to construct compartments of a smaller size.

Boundaries

5.8 The use of the distance to a boundary rather than to another building, in measuring the separation distance, makes it possible to calculate the allowable proportion of unprotected areas, regardless of whether there is a building on an adjoining site, and regardless of the location of that building, and the extent of any unprotected areas that it might have.

Usually only the distance to the actual boundary of the site needs to be considered. But in some circumstances, when the site boundary adjoins a space where further development is unlikely, such as a road, then part of the adjoining space may be included as falling within the relevant boundary for the purposes of this Section.

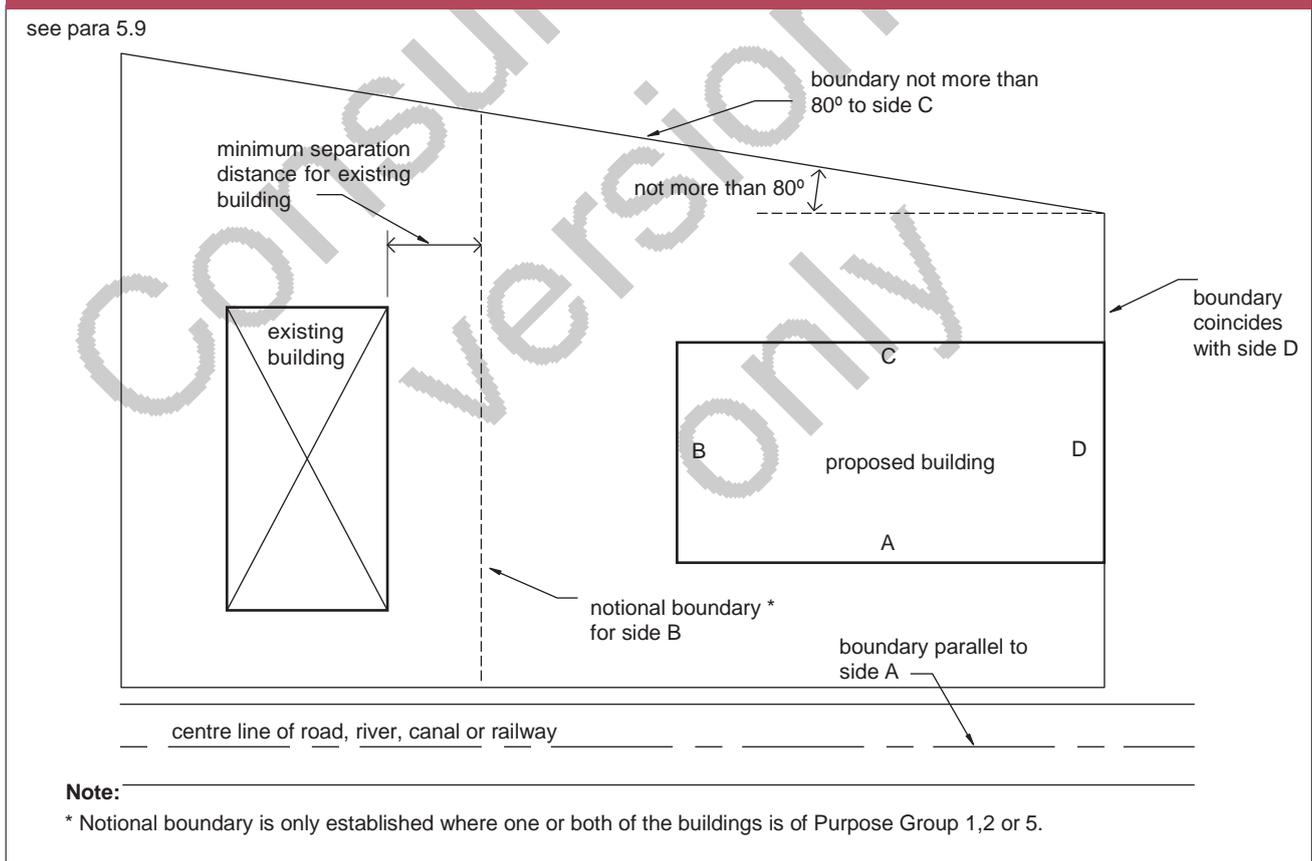
- 5.9 For a boundary to be a relevant boundary it should coincide with, be parallel to or be at an angle of not more than 80° to the side of the building (see Diagram 5.2).

A relevant boundary may be –

- (a) the actual boundary of the premises on which the building is located;
- (b) the centre line of a road, river, canal or railway which adjoins the actual boundary; or
- (c) a notional boundary established where two or more buildings (one of which is of Purpose Group 1, 2 or 5) are to share the same site. A notional boundary should be assumed so that both buildings comply with the space separation distances required by this Section.

Where a notional boundary is to be established and one of the buildings is an existing building, that building should be treated as if it were a new building.

Diagram 5.2 Relevant boundaries



Unprotected areas in external walls

- 5.10 Any part of an external wall which has less fire resistance than that required by Section 4 should be considered to be an unprotected area.

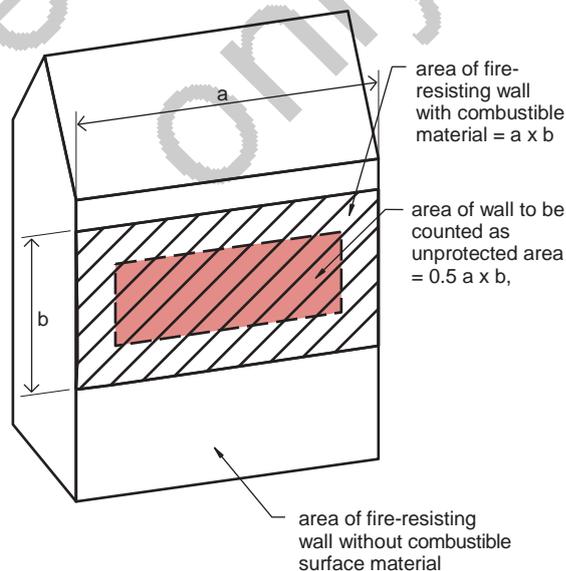
Where an external wall has the appropriate fire resistance but has a combustible material more than 1 mm thick as its external surface, that wall should be considered to be an unprotected area amounting to half the actual area of the combustible material as shown in Diagram 5.3. However, where such a combustible material has a Class 0 (National class) or Class B-s3,d2 or higher (European class) classification it need not be considered to be such an unprotected area.

Any part of the external wall of a protected stairway should be discounted when calculating unprotected areas. (However, Section 2 and Section 6 contain provisions relating to the relationship between the external walls of protected stairways and the unprotected areas of other parts of the building.)

Small unprotected areas may be discounted where they occur in an otherwise protected area of wall, provided that they do not exceed the areas and comply with the minimum spacing shown in Diagram 5.4.

Diagram 5.3 Combustible material on external walls

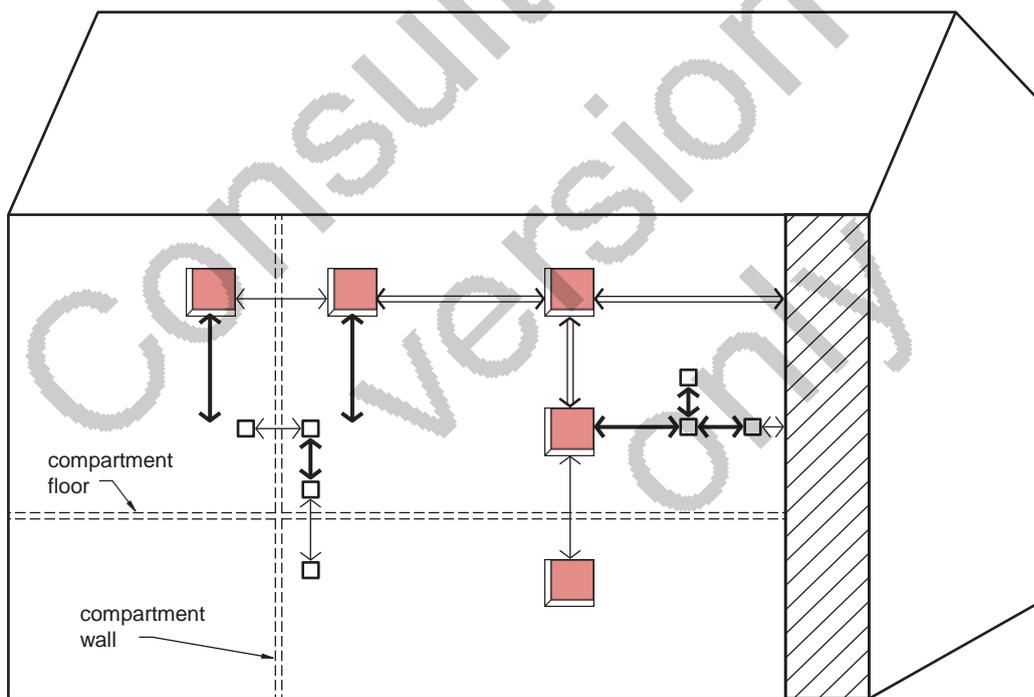
see para 5.10



- 5.11 An external wall situated within 1 m of any point on its relevant boundary should have no unprotected areas other than those shown in Diagram 5.4.
- 5.12 An external wall situated 1 m or more from any point on its relevant boundary may have unprotected areas provided that their total area does not exceed that given by the most favourable calculation method given in paragraphs 5.13 to 5.19. Where a building is uncomparted any part of an external wall which is more than 30 m above ground level may be discounted in the calculation.

Diagram 5.4 Unprotected areas which may be discounted

see para 5.10, 5.11 and 5.17



Key



an unprotected area of not more than 1 m² which may consist of two or more smaller areas amounting to not more than 1 m² within an area of 1 m x 1 m



an unprotected area of not more than 0.1 m²



the external wall of a protected stairway

Dimensional restrictions

↔ 4 m minimum distance

↔ 1.5 m minimum distance

↔ dimension not restricted

Provisions for and calculation of space separation and unprotected areas

- 5.13 A building should be separated from its relevant boundaries by at least half the distance at which the total thermal radiation intensity received from all unprotected areas in the external walls would be 12.6 kW/m^2 (in still air) assuming the radiation intensity at each unprotected area is –
- (a) 84 kW/m^2 where the building is of Purpose Group 1, 2, 3, 5 or 7(b); or
 - (b) 168 kW/m^2 where the building is of any other purpose group.

Where a building is compartmented each compartment should be calculated separately.

Where a building or compartment is fitted throughout with a sprinkler system complying with the relevant provisions of BS 5306-2 or BS EN 12845 for the appropriate occupancy, the thermal radiation intensities in (a) and (b) and the distances calculated using the methods given in paragraphs 5.16 to 5.19 may be halved subject to there being a minimum distance of 1 m. Alternatively, the amount of unprotected area may be doubled if the calculated boundary distance is maintained.

- 5.14 Building Research Establishment Report – *External fire spread: building separation and boundary distances* (BR 187: 1991) gives the method by which the thermal radiation intensity should be calculated for paragraph 5.13. It also gives detailed explanations, with worked examples, of Method 3 (paragraph 5.18) and Method 4 (paragraph 5.19).
- 5.15 Where a building is compartmented and contains an atrium in accordance with paragraph 4.23(d) the recommendations of BS 5588-7: Clause 28.2 may be followed for calculation purposes.

Method 1 (Small residential buildings)

- 5.16 This method may only be used for buildings in Purpose Groups 1 and 2(b) which do not exceed three storeys in height and are not more than 24 m in length. The maximum total area of unprotected areas in the side of a building should not exceed that given in Table 5.2 for the relevant minimum distance between that side and its boundary.

Table 5.2 Unprotected areas in small residential buildings (Method 1)

Minimum distance between side of building and relevant boundary (m)	Maximum total area of unprotected areas (m ²)
1	5.6
2	12
3	18
4	24
5	30
6	No limit

Method 2 (Small buildings and compartments)

- 5.17 This method may be used for buildings and compartments of any purpose group which do not exceed 10 m in height [this height limit does not apply to buildings of Purpose Group 7(b)]. The maximum total percentage of unprotected area in the side of a building should not exceed that given in Table 5.3 for the appropriate purpose group and minimum distance between that side and its relevant boundary. When calculating the unprotected area, any area which complies with paragraph 5.10 and Diagram 5.4 may be discounted.

Table 5.3 Unprotected areas in small buildings and compartments (Method 2)

Minimum distance between side of building and relevant boundary (m)		Maximum total percentage of unprotected area (%)
Purpose groups		
1, 2, 3 and 5	4, 6 and 7 *	
N/A	1	4
1	2	8
2.5	5	20
5	10	40
7.5	15	60
10	20	80
12.5	25	100

Notes:

* In the case of a car park in Purpose Group 7(b) the distances given for Purpose Groups 1, 2, 3 and 5 may be used.

N/A = not applicable.

Intermediate values may be obtained by interpolation.

Method 3 (Enclosing rectangle)

- 5.18 This method may be used for buildings and compartments of any purpose group. A building or compartment should be so situated that no point on its relevant boundary is –
- (a) between the relevant plane of reference and the side of the building; and
 - (b) closer to the relevant plane of reference than that given in Table 5.4 for the appropriate purpose group, dimensions of enclosing rectangle and unprotected area percentage.

A plane of reference is a vertical plane which touches the side, or some part of the side, of a building or compartment but which (however, far extended) does not pass within the structure (excluding balconies, copings and similar projections) of that building or compartment. The relevant plane of reference should be chosen to give the least separation distance between it and the relevant boundary. Normally, it is best for the plane of reference to be parallel to the relevant boundary.

The enclosing rectangle is the rectangle, of the least width and height given in Table 5.4, on the relevant plane of reference, which will –

- (i) enclose all the outer edges of the unprotected areas in the external wall of the building or compartment (other than any which is at an angle of 80° or more to the plane of reference). The outer edges should be projected to the plane of reference by lines perpendicular to such plane; and
- (ii) have two horizontal sides.

The total unprotected area is found by adding the areas, as projected on the plane of reference, of all unprotected areas.

The unprotected percentage is calculated from –

$$\text{unprotected percentage} = \frac{\text{total unprotected area}}{\text{enclosing rectangle area}} \times 100$$

The minimum distance from the plane of reference to the relevant boundary is given in Table 5.4, and where the unprotected percentage is between the values given in the Table the distance may be obtained by linear interpolation.

Table 5.4 Permitted unprotected percentages in relation to enclosing rectangles (Method 3)

Width of enclosing rectangle (m)	Distance from relevant boundary for unprotected percentage not exceeding								
	20%	30%	40%	50%	60%	70%	80%	90%	100%
	Minimum boundary distance (m) – figures in brackets are for Purpose Groups 1, 2, 3, 5 and 7(b)								
Enclosing rectangle 3 m high									
3	1.0(1.0)	1.5(1.0)	2.0(1.0)	2.0(1.5)	2.5(1.5)	2.5(1.5)	2.5(2.0)	3.0(2.0)	3.0(2.0)
6	1.5(1.0)	2.0(1.0)	2.5(1.5)	3.0(2.0)	3.0(2.0)	3.5(2.0)	3.5(2.5)	4.0(2.5)	4.0(3.0)
9	1.5(1.0)	2.5(1.0)	3.0(1.5)	3.5(2.0)	4.0(2.5)	4.0(2.5)	4.5(3.0)	5.0(3.0)	5.0(3.5)
12	2.0(1.0)	2.5(1.5)	3.0(2.0)	3.5(2.0)	4.0(2.5)	4.5(3.0)	5.0(3.0)	5.5(3.5)	5.5(3.5)
15	2.0(1.0)	2.5(1.5)	3.5(2.0)	4.0(2.5)	4.5(2.5)	5.0(3.0)	5.5(3.5)	6.0(3.5)	6.0(4.0)
18	2.0(1.0)	2.5(1.5)	3.5(2.0)	4.0(2.5)	5.0(2.5)	5.0(3.0)	6.0(3.5)	6.5(4.0)	6.5(4.0)
21	2.0(1.0)	3.0(1.5)	3.5(2.0)	4.5(2.5)	5.0(3.0)	5.5(3.0)	6.0(3.5)	6.5(4.0)	7.0(4.5)
24	2.0(1.0)	3.0(1.5)	3.5(2.0)	4.5(2.5)	5.0(3.0)	5.5(3.5)	6.0(3.5)	7.0(4.0)	7.5(4.5)
27	2.0(1.0)	3.0(1.5)	4.0(2.0)	4.5(2.5)	5.5(3.0)	6.0(3.5)	6.5(4.0)	7.0(4.0)	7.5(4.5)
30	2.0(1.0)	3.0(1.5)	4.0(2.0)	4.5(2.5)	5.5(3.0)	6.0(3.5)	6.5(4.0)	7.5(4.0)	8.0(4.5)
40	2.0(1.0)	3.0(1.5)	4.0(2.0)	5.0(2.5)	5.5(3.0)	6.5(3.5)	7.0(4.0)	8.0(4.0)	8.5(5.0)
50	2.0(1.0)	3.0(1.5)	4.0(2.0)	5.0(2.5)	6.0(3.0)	6.5(3.5)	7.5(4.0)	8.0(4.0)	9.0(5.0)
60	2.0(1.0)	3.0(1.5)	4.0(2.0)	5.0(2.5)	6.0(3.0)	7.0(3.5)	7.5(4.0)	8.5(4.0)	9.5(5.0)
80	2.0(1.0)	3.0(1.5)	4.0(2.0)	5.0(2.5)	6.0(3.0)	7.0(3.5)	8.0(4.0)	9.0(4.0)	9.5(5.0)
No limit	2.0(1.0)	3.0(1.5)	4.0(2.0)	5.0(2.5)	6.0(3.0)	7.0(3.5)	8.0(4.0)	9.0(4.0)	10.0(5.0)
Enclosing rectangle 6 m high									
3	1.5(1.0)	2.0(1.0)	2.5(1.5)	3.0(2.0)	3.0(2.0)	3.5(2.0)	3.5(2.5)	4.0(2.5)	4.0(3.0)
6	2.0(1.0)	3.0(1.5)	3.5(2.0)	4.0(2.5)	4.5(3.0)	5.0(3.0)	5.5(3.5)	5.5(4.0)	6.0(4.0)
9	2.5(1.0)	3.5(2.0)	4.5(2.5)	5.0(3.0)	5.5(3.5)	6.0(4.0)	6.0(4.5)	7.0(4.5)	7.0(5.0)
12	3.0(1.5)	4.0(2.5)	5.0(3.0)	5.5(3.5)	6.5(4.0)	7.0(4.5)	7.5(5.0)	8.0(5.0)	8.5(5.5)
15	3.0(1.5)	4.5(2.5)	5.5(3.0)	6.0(4.0)	7.0(4.5)	7.5(5.0)	8.0(5.5)	9.0(5.5)	9.0(6.0)
18	3.5(1.5)	4.5(2.5)	5.5(3.5)	6.5(4.0)	7.5(4.5)	8.0(5.0)	9.0(5.5)	9.5(6.0)	10.0(6.5)
21	3.5(1.5)	5.0(2.5)	6.0(3.5)	7.0(4.0)	8.0(5.0)	9.0(5.5)	9.5(6.0)	10.0(6.5)	10.5(7.0)
24	3.5(1.5)	5.0(2.5)	6.0(3.5)	7.0(4.5)	8.5(5.0)	9.5(5.5)	10.0(6.0)	10.5(7.0)	11.0(7.0)
27	3.5(1.5)	5.0(2.5)	6.5(3.5)	7.5(4.5)	8.5(5.0)	9.5(6.0)	10.5(6.5)	11.0(7.0)	12.0(7.5)
30	3.5(1.5)	5.0(2.5)	6.5(3.5)	8.0(4.5)	9.0(5.0)	10.0(6.0)	11.0(6.5)	12.0(7.0)	12.5(8.0)
40	3.5(1.5)	5.5(2.5)	7.0(3.5)	8.5(4.5)	10.0(5.5)	11.0(6.5)	12.0(7.0)	13.0(8.0)	14.0(8.5)
50	3.5(1.5)	5.5(2.5)	7.5(3.5)	9.0(4.5)	10.5(5.5)	11.5(6.5)	13.0(7.5)	14.0(8.0)	15.0(9.0)
60	3.5(1.5)	5.5(2.5)	7.5(3.5)	9.5(5.0)	11.0(5.5)	12.0(6.5)	13.5(7.5)	15.0(8.5)	16.0(9.5)
80	3.5(1.5)	6.0(2.5)	7.5(3.5)	9.5(5.0)	11.5(6.0)	13.0(7.0)	14.5(7.5)	16.0(8.5)	17.5(9.5)
100	3.5(1.5)	6.0(2.5)	8.0(3.5)	10.0(5.0)	12.0(6.0)	13.5(7.0)	15.0(8.0)	16.5(8.5)	18.0(10.0)
120	3.5(1.5)	6.0(2.5)	8.0(3.5)	10.0(5.0)	12.0(6.0)	14.0(7.0)	15.5(8.0)	17.0(8.5)	19.0(10.0)
No limit	3.5(1.5)	6.0(2.5)	8.0(3.5)	10.0(5.0)	12.0(6.0)	14.0(7.0)	16.0(8.0)	18.0(8.5)	19.0(10.0)

Table 5.4 Permitted unprotected percentages in relation to enclosing rectangles (Method 3) (cont'd)

Width of enclosing rectangle (m)	Distance from relevant boundary for unprotected percentage not exceeding								
	20%	30%	40%	50%	60%	70%	80%	90%	100%
	Minimum boundary distance (m) – figures in brackets are for Purpose Groups 1, 2, 3, 5 and 7(b)								
Enclosing rectangle 9 m high									
3	1.5(1.0)	2.5(1.0)	3.0(1.5)	3.5(2.0)	4.0(2.5)	4.0(2.5)	4.5(3.0)	5.0(3.0)	5.0(3.5)
6	2.5(1.0)	3.5(2.0)	4.5(2.5)	5.0(3.0)	5.5(3.5)	6.0(4.0)	6.5(4.5)	7.0(4.5)	7.0(5.0)
9	3.5(1.5)	4.5(2.5)	5.5(3.5)	6.0(4.0)	6.5(4.5)	7.5(5.0)	8.0(5.5)	8.5(5.5)	9.0(6.0)
12	3.5(1.5)	5.0(3.0)	6.0(3.5)	7.0(4.5)	7.5(5.0)	8.5(5.5)	9.0(6.0)	9.5(6.5)	10.5(7.0)
15	4.0(2.0)	5.5(3.0)	6.5(4.0)	7.5(5.0)	8.5(5.5)	9.5(6.0)	10.0(6.5)	11.0(7.0)	11.5(7.5)
18	4.5(2.0)	6.0(3.5)	7.0(4.5)	8.5(5.0)	9.5(6.0)	10.0(6.5)	11.0(7.0)	12.0(8.0)	12.5(8.5)
21	4.5(2.0)	6.5(3.5)	7.5(4.5)	9.0(5.5)	10.0(6.5)	11.0(7.0)	12.0(7.5)	13.0(8.5)	13.5(9.0)
24	5.0(2.0)	6.5(3.5)	8.0(5.0)	9.5(5.5)	11.0(6.5)	12.0(7.5)	13.0(8.0)	13.5(9.0)	14.5(9.5)
27	5.0(2.0)	7.0(3.5)	8.5(5.0)	10.0(6.0)	11.5(7.0)	12.5(7.5)	13.5(8.5)	14.5(9.5)	15.0(10.0)
30	5.0(2.0)	7.0(3.5)	9.0(5.0)	10.5(6.0)	12.0(7.0)	13.0(8.0)	14.0(9.0)	15.0(9.5)	16.0(10.5)
40	5.5(2.0)	7.5(3.5)	9.5(5.5)	11.5(6.5)	13.0(7.5)	14.5(8.5)	15.5(9.5)	17.0(10.5)	17.5(11.5)
50	5.5(2.0)	8.0(4.0)	10.0(5.5)	12.5(6.5)	14.0(8.0)	15.5(9.0)	17.0(10.0)	18.5(11.5)	19.5(12.5)
60	5.5(2.0)	8.0(4.0)	11.0(5.5)	13.0(7.0)	15.0(8.0)	16.5(9.5)	18.0(11.0)	19.5(11.5)	21.0(13.0)
80	5.5(2.0)	8.5(4.0)	11.5(5.5)	13.5(7.0)	16.0(8.5)	17.5(10.0)	19.5(11.5)	21.5(12.5)	23.0(13.5)
100	5.5(2.0)	8.5(4.0)	11.5(5.5)	14.5(7.0)	16.5(8.5)	18.5(10.0)	21.0(11.5)	22.5(12.5)	24.5(14.5)
120	5.5(2.0)	8.5(4.0)	11.5(5.5)	14.5(7.0)	17.0(8.5)	19.5(10.0)	21.5(11.5)	23.5(12.5)	26.0(14.5)
No Limit	5.5(2.0)	8.5(4.0)	11.5(5.5)	15.0(7.0)	17.5(8.5)	20.0(10.5)	22.5(12.0)	24.5(12.5)	27.0(15.0)
Enclosing rectangle 12 m high									
3	2.0(1.0)	2.5(1.5)	3.0(2.0)	3.5(2.0)	4.0(2.5)	4.5(3.0)	5.0(3.0)	5.5(3.5)	5.5(3.5)
6	3.0(1.5)	4.0(2.5)	5.0(3.0)	5.5(3.5)	6.5(4.0)	7.0(4.5)	7.5(5.0)	8.0(5.0)	8.5(5.5)
9	3.5(1.5)	5.0(3.0)	6.0(3.5)	7.0(4.5)	7.5(5.0)	8.5(5.5)	9.0(6.0)	9.5(6.5)	10.5(7.0)
12	4.5(1.5)	6.0(3.5)	7.0(4.5)	8.0(5.0)	9.0(6.0)	9.5(6.5)	11.0(7.0)	11.5(7.5)	12.0(8.0)
15	5.0(2.0)	6.5(3.5)	8.0(5.0)	9.0(5.5)	10.0(6.5)	11.0(7.0)	12.0(8.0)	13.0(8.5)	13.5(9.0)
18	5.0(2.5)	7.0(4.0)	8.5(5.0)	10.0(6.0)	11.0(7.0)	12.0(7.5)	13.0(8.5)	14.0(9.0)	14.5(10.0)
21	5.5(2.5)	7.5(4.0)	9.0(5.5)	10.5(6.5)	12.0(7.5)	13.0(8.5)	14.0(9.0)	15.0(10.0)	16.0(10.5)
24	6.0(2.5)	8.0(4.5)	9.5(6.0)	11.5(7.0)	12.5(8.0)	14.0(8.5)	15.0(9.5)	16.0(10.5)	16.5(11.5)
27	6.0(2.5)	8.0(4.5)	10.5(6.0)	12.0(7.0)	13.5(8.0)	14.5(9.0)	16.0(10.5)	17.0(11.0)	17.5(12.0)
30	6.5(2.5)	8.5(4.5)	10.5(6.5)	12.5(7.5)	14.0(8.5)	15.0(9.5)	16.5(10.5)	17.5(11.5)	18.5(12.5)
40	6.5(2.5)	9.5(5.0)	12.0(6.5)	14.0(8.0)	15.5(9.5)	17.5(10.5)	18.5(12.0)	20.0(13.0)	21.0(14.0)
50	7.0(2.5)	10.0(5.0)	13.0(7.0)	15.0(8.5)	17.0(10.0)	19.0(11.0)	20.5(13.0)	23.0(14.0)	23.0(15.0)
60	7.0(2.5)	10.5(5.0)	13.5(7.0)	16.0(9.0)	18.0(10.5)	20.0(12.0)	21.5(13.5)	23.5(14.5)	25.0(16.0)
80	7.0(2.5)	11.0(5.0)	14.5(7.0)	17.0(9.0)	19.5(11.0)	21.5(13.0)	23.5(14.5)	26.0(16.0)	27.5(17.0)
100	7.5(2.5)	11.5(5.0)	15.0(7.5)	18.0(9.5)	21.0(11.5)	23.0(13.5)	25.5(15.0)	28.0(16.5)	30.0(18.0)
120	7.5(2.5)	11.5(5.0)	15.0(7.5)	18.5(9.5)	22.0(11.5)	24.0(13.5)	27.0(15.0)	29.5(17.0)	31.5(18.5)
No limit	7.5(2.5)	12.0(5.0)	15.5(7.5)	19.0(9.5)	22.5(12.0)	25.0(14.0)	28.0(15.5)	30.5(17.0)	34.0(19.0)

Table 5.4 Permitted unprotected percentages in relation to enclosing rectangles (Method 3) (cont'd)

Width of enclosing rectangle (m)	Distance from relevant boundary for unprotected percentage not exceeding								
	20%	30%	40%	50%	60%	70%	80%	90%	100%
	Minimum boundary distance (m) – figures in brackets are for Purpose Groups 1, 2, 3, 5 and 7(b)								
Enclosing rectangle 15 m high									
3	2.0(1.0)	2.5(1.5)	3.5(2.0)	4.0(2.5)	4.5(2.5)	5.0(3.0)	5.5(3.5)	6.0(3.5)	6.0(4.0)
6	3.0(1.5)	4.5(2.5)	5.5(3.0)	6.0(4.0)	7.0(4.5)	7.5(5.0)	8.0(5.5)	9.0(5.5)	9.0(6.0)
9	4.0(2.0)	5.5(3.0)	6.5(4.0)	7.5(5.0)	8.5(5.5)	9.5(6.0)	10.0(6.5)	11.0(7.0)	11.5(7.5)
12	5.0(2.0)	6.5(3.5)	8.0(5.0)	9.0(5.5)	10.0(6.5)	11.0(7.0)	12.0(8.0)	13.0(8.5)	13.5(9.0)
15	5.5(2.0)	7.0(4.0)	9.0(5.5)	10.0(6.5)	11.5(7.0)	12.5(8.0)	13.5(9.0)	14.5(9.5)	15.0(10.0)
18	6.0(2.5)	8.0(4.5)	9.5(6.0)	11.0(7.0)	12.5(8.0)	13.5(8.5)	14.5(9.5)	15.5(10.5)	16.5(11.0)
21	6.5(2.5)	8.5(5.0)	10.5(6.5)	12.0(7.5)	13.5(8.5)	14.5(9.5)	16.0(10.5)	16.5(11.0)	17.5(12.0)
24	6.5(3.0)	9.0(5.0)	11.0(6.5)	13.0(8.0)	14.5(9.0)	15.5(10.0)	17.0(11.0)	18.0(12.0)	19.0(13.0)
27	7.0(3.0)	9.5(5.5)	11.5(7.0)	13.5(8.5)	15.0(9.5)	16.5(10.5)	18.0(11.5)	19.0(12.5)	20.0(13.5)
30	7.5(3.0)	10.0(5.5)	12.0(7.5)	14.0(8.5)	16.0(10.0)	17.0(11.0)	18.5(12.0)	20.0(13.5)	21.0(14.0)
40	8.0(3.0)	11.0(6.0)	13.5(8.0)	16.0(9.5)	18.0(11.0)	19.5(12.5)	21.0(13.5)	22.5(15.0)	23.5(16.0)
50	8.5(3.5)	12.0(6.0)	15.0(8.5)	17.5(10.0)	19.5(12.0)	21.5(13.5)	23.0(15.0)	25.0(16.5)	26.0(17.5)
60	8.5(3.5)	12.5(6.5)	15.5(8.5)	18.0(10.5)	21.0(12.5)	23.5(14.0)	25.0(15.5)	27.0(17.0)	28.0(18.0)
80	9.0(3.5)	13.5(6.5)	17.0(9.0)	20.0(11.0)	23.0(13.5)	25.5(15.0)	28.0(17.0)	30.0(18.5)	31.5(20.0)
100	9.0(3.5)	14.0(6.5)	18.0(9.0)	21.5(11.5)	24.5(14.0)	27.5(16.0)	30.0(18.0)	32.5(19.5)	34.5(21.5)
120	9.0(3.5)	14.0(6.5)	18.5(9.0)	22.5(11.5)	25.5(14.0)	28.5(16.5)	31.5(18.5)	34.5(20.5)	37.0(22.5)
No limit	9.0(3.5)	14.5(6.5)	19.0(9.0)	23.0(12.0)	27.0(14.5)	30.0(17.0)	34.0(19.0)	36.0(21.0)	39.0(23.0)
Enclosing rectangle 18 m high									
3	2.0(1.0)	2.5(1.5)	3.5(2.0)	4.0(2.5)	5.0(2.5)	5.0(3.0)	6.0(3.5)	6.5(4.0)	6.5(4.0)
6	3.5(1.5)	4.5(2.5)	5.5(3.5)	6.5(4.0)	7.5(4.5)	8.0(5.0)	9.0(5.5)	9.5(6.0)	10.0(6.5)
9	4.5(2.0)	6.0(3.5)	7.0(4.5)	8.5(5.0)	9.5(6.0)	10.0(6.5)	11.0(7.0)	12.0(8.0)	12.5(8.5)
12	5.0(2.5)	7.0(4.0)	8.5(5.0)	10.0(6.0)	11.0(7.0)	12.0(7.5)	13.0(8.5)	14.0(9.0)	14.5(10.0)
15	6.0(2.5)	8.0(4.5)	9.5(6.0)	11.0(7.0)	12.5(8.0)	13.5(8.5)	14.5(9.5)	15.5(10.5)	16.5(11.0)
18	6.5(2.5)	8.5(5.0)	11.0(6.5)	12.0(7.5)	13.5(8.5)	14.5(9.5)	16.0(11.0)	17.0(11.5)	18.0(13.0)
21	7.0(3.0)	9.5(5.5)	11.5(7.0)	13.0(8.0)	14.5(9.5)	16.0(10.5)	17.0(11.5)	18.0(12.5)	19.5(13.0)
24	7.5(3.0)	10.0(5.5)	12.0(7.5)	14.0(8.5)	15.5(10.0)	16.5(11.0)	18.5(12.0)	19.5(13.0)	20.5(14.0)
27	8.0(3.5)	10.5(6.0)	12.5(8.0)	14.5(9.0)	16.5(10.5)	17.5(11.5)	19.5(12.5)	20.5(13.5)	21.5(14.5)
30	8.0(3.5)	11.0(6.5)	13.5(8.0)	15.5(9.5)	17.0(11.0)	18.5(12.0)	20.5(13.5)	21.5(14.5)	22.5(15.5)
40	9.0(4.0)	12.0(7.0)	15.0(9.0)	17.5(11.0)	19.5(12.0)	21.5(13.5)	23.5(15.0)	25.0(16.5)	26.0(17.5)
50	9.5(4.0)	13.0(7.0)	16.5(9.5)	19.0(11.5)	21.5(13.0)	23.5(15.0)	26.0(16.5)	27.5(18.0)	29.0(19.0)
60	10.0(4.0)	14.0(7.5)	17.5(10.0)	20.5(12.0)	23.0(14.0)	26.0(16.0)	27.5(17.5)	29.5(19.5)	31.0(20.5)
80	10.0(4.0)	15.0(7.5)	19.0(10.0)	22.5(13.0)	26.0(15.0)	28.5(17.0)	31.0(19.0)	33.5(21.0)	35.0(22.5)
100	10.0(4.0)	16.0(7.5)	20.5(10.0)	24.0(13.5)	28.0(16.0)	31.0(18.0)	33.5(20.5)	36.0(22.5)	38.5(24.0)
120	10.0(4.0)	16.5(7.5)	21.0(10.0)	25.5(14.0)	29.5(16.5)	32.5(19.0)	35.5(21.0)	39.0(23.5)	41.5(25.5)
No limit	10.0(4.0)	17.0(8.0)	22.0(10.0)	26.5(14.0)	30.5(17.0)	34.0(19.5)	37.0(22.0)	41.0(24.0)	43.5(26.5)

Table 5.4 Permitted unprotected percentages in relation to enclosing rectangles (Method 3) (cont'd)

Width of enclosing rectangle (m)	Distance from relevant boundary for unprotected percentage not exceeding								
	20%	30%	40%	50%	60%	70%	80%	90%	100%
	Minimum boundary distance (m) – figures in brackets are for Purpose Groups 1, 2, 3, 5 and 7(b)								
Enclosing rectangle 21 m high									
3	2.0(1.0)	3.0(1.5)	3.5(2.0)	4.5(2.5)	5.0(3.0)	5.5(3.0)	6.0(3.5)	6.5(4.0)	7.0(4.5)
6	3.5(1.5)	5.0(2.5)	6.0(3.5)	7.0(4.0)	8.0(5.0)	9.0(5.5)	9.5(6.0)	10.0(6.5)	10.5(7.0)
9	4.5(2.0)	6.5(3.5)	7.5(4.5)	9.0(5.5)	10.0(6.5)	11.0(7.0)	12.0(7.5)	13.0(8.5)	13.5(9.0)
12	5.5(2.5)	7.5(4.0)	9.0(5.5)	10.5(6.5)	12.0(7.5)	13.0(8.5)	14.0(9.0)	15.0(10.0)	16.0(10.5)
15	6.5(2.5)	8.5(5.0)	10.5(6.5)	12.0(7.5)	13.5(8.5)	14.5(9.5)	16.0(10.5)	16.5(11.0)	17.5(12.0)
18	7.0(3.0)	9.5(5.5)	11.5(7.0)	13.0(8.0)	14.5(9.5)	16.0(10.5)	17.0(11.5)	18.0(12.5)	19.5(13.0)
21	7.5(3.0)	10.0(6.0)	12.5(7.5)	14.0(9.0)	15.5(10.0)	17.0(11.0)	18.5(12.5)	20.0(13.5)	21.0(14.0)
24	8.0(3.5)	10.5(6.0)	13.0(8.0)	15.0(9.5)	16.5(10.5)	18.0(12.0)	20.0(13.0)	21.0(14.0)	22.0(15.0)
27	8.5(3.5)	11.5(6.5)	14.0(8.5)	16.0(10.0)	18.0(11.5)	19.0(13.0)	21.0(14.0)	22.5(15.0)	23.5(16.0)
30	9.0(4.0)	12.0(7.0)	14.5(9.0)	16.5(10.5)	18.5(12.0)	20.5(13.0)	22.0(14.5)	23.5(16.0)	25.0(16.5)
40	10.0(4.5)	13.5(7.5)	16.5(10.0)	19.0(12.0)	21.5(13.5)	23.0(15.0)	25.5(16.5)	27.0(18.0)	28.5(19.0)
50	11.0(4.5)	14.5(8.0)	18.0(11.0)	21.0(13.0)	23.5(14.5)	25.5(16.5)	28.0(18.0)	30.0(20.0)	31.5(21.0)
60	11.5(4.5)	15.5(8.5)	19.5(11.5)	22.5(13.5)	25.5(15.5)	28.0(17.5)	30.5(19.5)	32.5(21.0)	33.5(22.5)
80	12.0(4.5)	17.0(8.5)	21.0(12.0)	25.0(14.5)	28.5(17.0)	31.5(19.0)	34.0(21.0)	36.5(23.5)	38.5(25.0)
100	12.0(4.5)	18.0(9.0)	22.5(12.0)	27.0(15.5)	31.0(18.0)	34.5(20.5)	37.0(22.5)	40.0(25.0)	42.0(27.0)
120	12.0(4.5)	18.5(9.0)	23.5(12.0)	28.5(16.0)	32.5(18.5)	36.5(21.5)	39.5(23.5)	43.0(26.5)	45.5(28.5)
No limit	12.0(4.5)	19.0(9.0)	25.0(12.0)	29.5(16.0)	34.5(19.0)	38.0(22.0)	41.5(25.0)	45.5(26.5)	48.0(29.5)
Enclosing rectangle 24 m high									
3	2.0(1.0)	3.0(1.5)	3.5(2.0)	4.5(2.5)	5.0(3.0)	5.5(3.5)	6.0(3.5)	7.0(4.0)	7.5(4.5)
6	3.5(1.5)	5.0(2.5)	6.0(3.5)	7.0(4.5)	8.5(5.0)	9.5(5.5)	10.0(6.0)	10.5(7.0)	11.0(7.0)
9	5.0(2.0)	6.5(3.5)	8.0(5.0)	9.5(5.5)	11.0(6.5)	12.0(7.5)	13.0(8.0)	13.5(9.0)	14.5(9.5)
12	6.0(2.5)	8.0(4.5)	9.5(6.0)	11.5(7.0)	12.5(8.0)	14.0(8.5)	15.0(9.5)	16.0(10.5)	16.5(11.5)
15	6.5(3.0)	9.0(5.0)	11.0(6.5)	13.0(8.0)	14.5(9.0)	15.5(10.0)	17.0(11.0)	18.0(12.0)	19.0(13.0)
18	7.5(3.0)	10.0(5.5)	12.0(7.5)	14.0(8.5)	15.5(10.0)	16.5(11.0)	18.5(12.0)	19.5(13.0)	20.5(14.0)
21	8.0(3.5)	10.5(6.0)	13.0(8.0)	15.0(9.5)	16.5(10.5)	18.0(12.0)	20.0(13.0)	21.0(14.0)	22.0(15.0)
24	8.5(3.5)	11.5(6.5)	14.0(8.5)	16.0(10.0)	18.0(11.5)	19.5(12.5)	21.0(14.0)	22.5(15.0)	24.0(16.0)
27	9.0(4.0)	12.5(7.0)	15.0(9.0)	17.0(11.0)	19.0(12.5)	20.5(13.5)	22.5(15.0)	24.0(16.0)	25.5(17.0)
30	9.5(4.0)	13.0(7.5)	15.5(9.5)	18.0(11.5)	20.0(13.0)	21.5(14.0)	23.5(15.5)	25.0(17.0)	26.5(18.0)
40	11.0(4.5)	14.5(8.5)	18.0(11.0)	20.5(13.0)	23.0(14.5)	25.0(16.0)	27.5(18.0)	29.0(19.0)	30.5(20.5)
50	12.0(5.0)	16.0(9.0)	19.5(12.0)	22.5(14.0)	25.5(16.0)	27.5(17.5)	30.0(19.5)	32.0(21.0)	33.5(22.5)
60	12.5(5.0)	17.0(9.5)	21.0(12.5)	24.5(15.0)	27.5(17.0)	30.0(19.0)	32.5(21.0)	35.0(23.0)	36.5(24.5)
80	13.5(5.0)	18.5(10.0)	23.5(13.5)	27.5(16.5)	31.0(18.5)	34.5(21.0)	37.0(23.5)	39.5(25.5)	41.5(27.5)
100	13.5(5.0)	20.0(10.0)	25.0(13.5)	29.5(17.0)	33.5(20.0)	37.0(22.5)	40.0(25.0)	43.0(27.5)	45.5(29.5)
120	13.5(5.5)	20.5(10.0)	26.5(13.5)	31.0(17.5)	36.0(20.5)	39.5(23.5)	43.0(26.5)	46.5(29.0)	49.0(31.0)
No limit	13.5(5.5)	21.0(10.0)	27.5(13.5)	32.5(18.0)	37.5(21.0)	42.0(24.0)	45.5(27.5)	49.5(30.0)	52.0(32.5)

Table 5.4 Permitted unprotected percentages in relation to enclosing rectangles (Method 3) (cont'd)

Width of enclosing rectangle (m)	Distance from relevant boundary for unprotected percentage not exceeding								
	20%	30%	40%	50%	60%	70%	80%	90%	100%
	Minimum boundary distance (m) – figures in brackets are for Purpose Groups 1, 2, 3, 5 and 7(b)								
Enclosing rectangle 27 m high									
3	2.0(1.0)	3.0(1.5)	4.0(2.0)	4.5(2.5)	5.5(3.0)	6.0(3.5)	6.5(4.0)	7.0(4.0)	7.5(4.5)
6	3.5(1.5)	5.0(2.5)	6.5(3.5)	7.5(4.5)	8.5(5.0)	9.5(6.0)	10.5(6.5)	11.0(7.0)	12.0(7.5)
9	5.0(2.0)	7.0(3.5)	8.5(5.0)	10.0(6.0)	11.5(7.0)	12.5(7.5)	13.5(8.5)	14.5(9.5)	15.0(10.0)
12	6.0(2.5)	8.0(4.5)	10.5(6.0)	12.0(7.0)	13.5(8.0)	14.5(9.0)	16.0(10.5)	17.0(11.0)	17.5(12.0)
15	7.0(3.0)	9.5(5.5)	11.5(7.0)	13.5(8.5)	15.0(9.5)	16.5(10.5)	18.0(11.5)	19.0(12.5)	20.0(13.5)
18	8.0(3.5)	10.5(6.0)	12.5(8.0)	14.5(9.0)	16.5(10.5)	17.5(11.5)	19.5(12.5)	20.5(13.5)	21.5(14.5)
21	8.5(3.5)	11.5(6.5)	14.0(8.5)	16.0(10.0)	18.0(11.5)	19.0(13.0)	21.0(14.0)	22.5(15.0)	23.5(16.0)
24	9.0(3.5)	12.5(7.0)	15.0(9.0)	17.0(11.0)	19.0(12.5)	20.5(13.5)	22.5(15.0)	24.0(16.0)	25.5(17.0)
27	10.0(4.0)	13.0(7.5)	16.0(10.0)	18.0(11.5)	20.0(13.0)	22.0(14.0)	24.0(16.0)	25.5(17.0)	27.0(18.0)
30	10.0(4.0)	13.5(8.0)	17.0(10.0)	19.0(12.0)	21.0(13.5)	23.0(15.0)	25.0(17.0)	26.5(18.0)	28.0(19.0)
40	11.5(5.0)	15.5(9.0)	19.0(11.5)	22.0(14.0)	24.5(15.5)	26.5(17.5)	29.0(19.0)	30.5(20.5)	32.5(22.0)
50	12.5(5.5)	17.0(9.5)	21.0(12.5)	24.0(15.0)	27.0(17.0)	29.5(19.0)	32.0(21.0)	34.5(22.5)	36.0(24.0)
60	13.5(5.5)	18.5(10.5)	22.5(13.5)	26.5(16.0)	29.5(18.5)	32.0(20.5)	35.0(22.5)	37.0(24.5)	39.0(26.5)
80	14.5(6.0)	20.5(11.0)	25.0(14.5)	29.5(17.5)	33.0(20.5)	36.5(22.5)	39.5(25.0)	42.0(27.5)	44.0(29.5)
100	15.5(6.0)	21.5(11.0)	27.0(15.5)	32.0(19.0)	36.5(21.5)	40.5(24.5)	43.0(27.0)	46.5(30.0)	48.5(32.0)
120	15.5(6.0)	22.5(11.5)	28.5(15.5)	34.0(19.5)	39.0(22.5)	43.0(26.0)	46.5(28.5)	50.5(32.0)	53.0(34.0)
No limit	15.5(6.0)	23.5(11.5)	29.5(15.5)	35.0(20.0)	40.5(23.5)	44.5(27.0)	48.5(29.5)	52.0(33.0)	55.5(35.0)

Method 4 (Aggregate notional area)

5.19 This method can be used for a building or compartment of any purpose group. A building or compartment should be so situated that the aggregate notional area of the unprotected areas in the side of the building or compartment does not exceed, in the case of –

- (a) a building or compartment of Purpose Group 1, 2, 3, 5 or 7(b) – 210 m²; or
- (b) a building or compartment of any other purpose group – 90 m²,

when calculated from any vertical datum on its relevant boundary.

The aggregate notional area is the aggregate of the areas of unprotected area in the side of the building or compartment, each such unprotected area being multiplied by the Factor given in Table 5.5 relative to the distance the unprotected area is from the vertical datum.

A vertical datum is a vertical line of unlimited height at any point on the relevant boundary and the datum line is the line joining the vertical datum to the nearest point on the side of the building or compartment.

When calculating the aggregate notional area no account should be taken of any unprotected area which is –

- (i) screened from the vertical datum by any part of an external wall which is not an unprotected area;
- (ii) outside a horizontal area centred on the vertical datum, having a radius of 50 m and extending 90° on either side of the datum line;
- (iii) facing away from the vertical datum; or
- (iv) making an angle of less than 10° with a line drawn from it to the vertical datum.

Table 5.5 Multiplication factors for determining aggregate notional areas (Method 4)

Distance of unprotected area from vertical datum (m)		Factor
Not less than	Less than	
1.0	1.2	80
1.2	1.8	40
1.8	2.7	20
2.7	4.3	10
4.3	6.0	4
6.0	8.5	2
8.5	12.0	1
12.0	18.5	0.5
18.5	27.5	0.25
27.5	50.0	0.1
50.0	No limit	0

Canopies

5.20 The high degree of ventilation and heat dissipation achieved by open sided canopies means that the space separation required by paragraph 5.13 may be onerous.

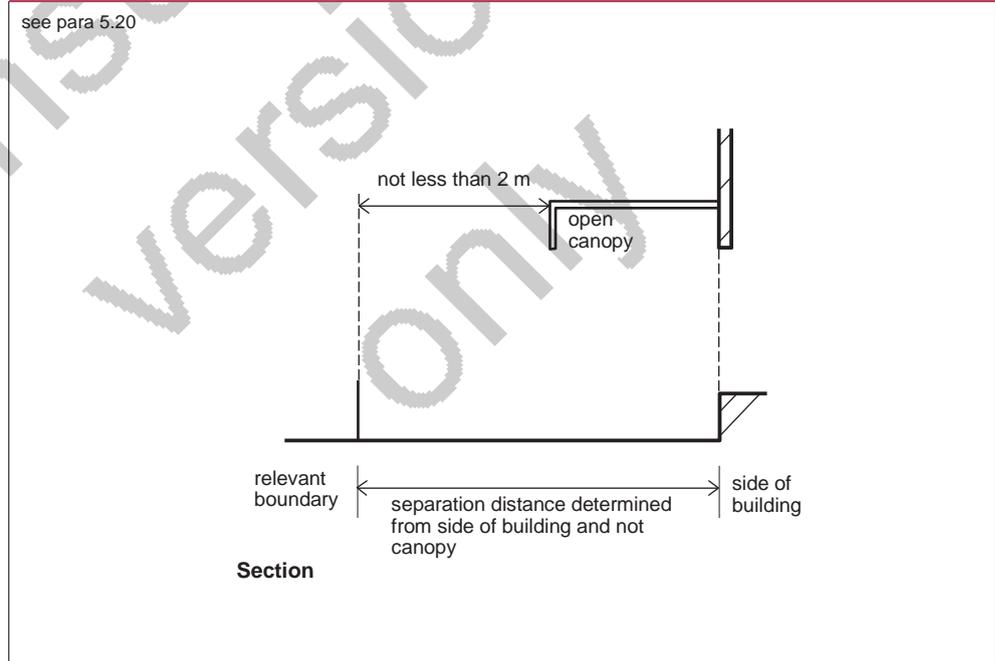
The provisions of paragraph 5.13 should not apply to –

- (a) a free standing single storey, open sided canopy, constructed of non-combustible materials, which is not less than 1 m from its relevant boundaries; and
- (b) a covered way, covered yard or a carport, which is open on two or more sides and is not more than 40 m² in area.

When determining the separation distance an attached single storey canopy which is not less than 2 m from its relevant boundaries and open on all sides other than the attached side may be discounted (see Diagram 5.5).

The provisions regarding roof coverings and roof separation distances should apply (see paragraph 5.21 to 5.26).

Diagram 5.5 The effect of an attached canopy on separation distance



Roofs

Roof covering designations (National tests)

- 5.21 The designation of a roof covering in respect of external fire exposure should be determined by testing in accordance with BS 476: Part 3 and expressed by two letters in the range A to D with an AA classification being the best. The first letter indicates the time to penetration and the second letter indicates a measure of the spread of flame. The notional designations of some generic roof coverings are given in Table 5.6.

Note – The National classifications do not automatically equate with the equivalent European classifications, therefore products cannot typically assume a European class unless they have been tested accordingly.

Roof covering designations (European tests)

- 5.22 Performance in terms of the resistance of roofs to external fire exposure is determined by reference to Commission Decision 2005/823/EC amending Decision 2001/671/EC establishing a classification system for the external fire performance of roofs and roof coverings.

Constructions are classified within the European system as $B_{\text{ROOF}}(t_4)$, $C_{\text{ROOF}}(t_4)$, $D_{\text{ROOF}}(t_4)$, $E_{\text{ROOF}}(t_4)$ or $F_{\text{ROOF}}(t_4)$ in accordance with BS EN 13501-5: Fire classification of construction products and building elements: Classification using data from external fire exposure to roof tests. With $B_{\text{ROOF}}(t_4)$ being the highest performance and $F_{\text{ROOF}}(t_4)$ being the lowest.

BS EN 13501-5 refers to four separate tests. The suffix (t4) used above indicates that test 4 is to be used for the purposes of this Technical Booklet.

- 5.23 Where a thermoplastic material cannot be given a designation when tested to BS 476: Part 3 it may be used as a rooflight provided that it can be classified under paragraph 3.5 and is used in accordance with paragraph 5.25. Where unwired glass, not less than 4 mm thick, is used in a rooflight it should be regarded as having an AA (National class) or $B_{\text{ROOF}}(t_4)$ (European class) designation.

Table 5.6 Notional designations of roof coverings

Part I – Pitched roofs covered with slates or tiles				
Covering material		Supporting structure	Designation	
1	Natural slates	Timber rafters with or without underfelt, sarking, boarding, wood wool slabs, compressed straw slabs, plywood, wood chipboard or fibre insulating board	AA (National class) or B _{ROOF} (t4) (European class)	
2	Fibre reinforced cement sheets			
3	Clay tiles			
4	Concrete tiles			
Notes: Although this Table does not include guidance on pitched roofs covered with bitumen felt, it should be noted that there is a wide range of materials on the market and information on specific products is readily available from manufacturers.				
Part II – Pitched roofs covered with self-supporting sheets				
Details of covering		Supporting structure	Designation	
Material	Construction			
1	Profiled sheets of – (i) galvanised steel; (ii) aluminium; (iii) fibre reinforced cement; or (iv) prepainted (coil coated) steel or aluminium with a PVC or PVF ₂ coating	Single skin without underlay or with underlay of – (i) plasterboard; (ii) fibre insulating board; or (iii) wood wool slab	Structure of timber, steel or concrete	AA (National class) or B _{ROOF} (t4) (European class)
2	Profiled sheets of – (i) galvanised steel; (ii) aluminium; (iii) fibre reinforced cement; or (iv) prepainted (coil coated) steel or aluminium with a PVC or PVF ₂ coating	Double skin without interlayer or with interlayer of – (i) resin-bonded glass fibre; (ii) mineral wool slab; (iii) polystyrene; or (iv) polyurethane	Structure of timber, steel or concrete	AA (National class) or B _{ROOF} (t4) (European class)

Table 5.6 Notional designations of roof coverings (contd)

Part III – Pitched or flat roofs covered with fully supported material			
Details of covering			Designation
Covering material	Supporting structure		
1 Aluminium sheet	Timber joists and –		AA*(National class) or B _{ROOF} (t4) (European class)
2 Copper sheet	(i) tongued and grooved boarding; or		
3 Zinc sheet	(ii) plain edged boarding		
4 Lead sheet			
5 Mastic asphalt			
6 Vitreous enamelled steel sheet	Steel or timber joists with deck of–		AA (National class) or B _{ROOF} (t4) (European class)
7 Lead/tin alloy coated steel sheet	(i) wood wool slab;		
	(ii) compressed straw slab;		
	(iii) wood chipboard;		
	(iv) fibre insulating board; or		
8 Zinc/aluminium alloy coated steel sheet	(v) 9.5 mm plywood		
9 Pre-painted (coil coated) steel sheet including liquid-applied PVC coatings	Concrete or clay pot slab (cast in situ or precast), or non-combustible deck of steel, aluminium or fibre reinforced cement (with or without insulation)		AA (National class) or B _{ROOF} (t4) (European class)
<p>Note:</p> <p>* Lead sheet supported by timber joists and plain edge boarding should be deemed to be of designation BA (National class) or C_{ROOF}(t4) (European class).</p>			
Part IV – Flat roofs covered with bitumen felt			
<p>A flat roof comprising a covering of bitumen felt should (irrespective of the felt specification) be deemed to be of designation AA (National class) or B_{ROOF}(t4) (European class) if the felt is laid on a deck constructed of 6 mm plywood, 12.5 mm wood chipboard, 16 mm (finished) plain edged timber boarding, compressed straw slab, screeded wood wool slab, profiled fibre reinforced cement of steel deck (single or double skin) with or without fibre insulating board overlay, or concrete or clay pot slab (insitu or pre cast) and has a surface finish of –</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> (a) bitumen bedded stone chippings covering the whole surface to a depth of not less than 12.5 mm; (b) bitumen bedded tiles of a non-combustible material; (c) sand and cement screed; or (d) macadam. 			

Space separation - roofs

5.24 The minimum distance from any part of a roof, other than a plastic rooflight, to a relevant boundary (see paragraph 5.9) should be not less than that given in Table 5.7 for the relevant designation of roof covering. There are no restrictions on the use of roof coverings designated AA, AB or AC (National class) or B_{ROOF}(t4) (European class). In addition, roof covering products (and/or materials) as defined in Commission Decision 2000/553/EC implementing Council Directive 89/106/EEC as regards the external fire performance of roof coverings can be considered to fulfil all of the requirements for performance characteristic “external fire performance” without the need for testing provided that any national provisions on the design and execution of works are fulfilled. That is, the roof covering products (and/or materials) defined in this Commission Decision can be used without restriction.

The boundary formed by the compartment wall separating semi-detached dwellinghouses should be disregarded for the purposes of this paragraph.

Table 5.7 Limitations on roof coverings

Designation of covering of roof or part of roof		Minimum distance from any point on relevant boundary			
		Less than 6 m	Not less than 6 m	Not less than 12 m	Not less than 20 m
National Class	European Class				
AA, AB or AC	B _{ROOF} (t4)	✓	✓	✓	✓
BA, BB or BC	C _{ROOF} (t4)	X	✓	✓	✓
CA, CB or CC	D _{ROOF} (t4)	X	✓ (1)(2)	✓ (1)	✓
AD, BD or CD	E _{ROOF} (t4)	X	✓ (1)(2)	✓ (1)	✓ (1)
DA, DB, DC or DD	F _{ROOF} (t4)	X	X	X	✓ (1)(2)

Notes:

- ✓ Acceptable.
- X Not acceptable.
- (1) Not acceptable on any of the following buildings –
 - (i) a dwellinghouse in a terrace of three or more dwellinghouses;
 - (ii) a building of Purpose Group 6 or 7 of any size; and
 - (iii) a building of any other purpose group with a cubic capacity greater than 1500 m³.
- (2) Acceptable on buildings not listed in Note 1 but only where that part of the roof is –
 - (i) not more than 3 m² in area;
 - (ii) not less than 1.5 m from any similar part; and
 - (iii) the roof covering between any such parts is a material of limited combustibility.

- 5.25 Where a roof incorporates a plastic rooflight, which is not designated AA, AB, AC, BA, BB or BC (National class), or B_{ROOF}(t4) or C_{ROOF}(t4) (European class), the minimum distance from that rooflight to a relevant boundary should be not less than that given in Tables 5.8 and 5.9 for the appropriate classification of the rooflight and the space over which it is located.

For the purposes of this paragraph and Tables 5.8 and 5.9 a rigid thermoplastic rooflight, made from polycarbonate or unplasticised PVC, which achieves a Class 1 classification for surface spread of flame (see paragraph 3.4) may be regarded as having an AA (National class) or B_{ROOF}(t4) (European class) designation (other than for the purposes of paragraph 4.21(a) and Diagram 4.2).

- 5.26 Thatch or wood shingles should be regarded as having an AD, BD or CD (National class) or E_{ROOF}(t4) (European class) designation in Table 5.7 where performance under BS 476: Part 3 or ENV 1187, test4 cannot be established.

Table 5.8 Plastic rooflights Limitations on use and boundary distance

Minimum classification on lower surface ⁽¹⁾	Space which rooflight can serve	Minimum distance (m) from any point on relevant boundary to rooflight with an external surface classification of	
		AD, BD,CD (National class) or E _{ROOF} (t4) (European class) CA, CB, CC, (National class) or D _{ROOF} (t4) (European class)	DA, DB, DC, DD (National class) or F _{ROOF} (t4) (European class)
Class 3 (National class) or Class D-s3,d2 (European class)	(a) Balcony, verandah, carport, covered way or loading bay which has at least one longer side wholly or permanently open	6	20
	(b) Detached swimming pool		
	(c) Conservatory, garage or outbuilding, with a maximum floor area of 40 m ²		
	(d) Circulation space ⁽³⁾ (except a protected stairway)	6 ⁽²⁾	20 ⁽²⁾
	(e) Room ⁽³⁾		

Notes:

(1) As required by paragraph 3.14.

(2) The rooflight should also comply with Diagram 5.6.

(3) Single skin rooflight only, in the case of non-thermoplastic materials.

Rooflights may have upper and lower surfaces with different properties if they have double skins or are laminates of different materials – in which case the more onerous distance applies.

Where paragraph 4.21(a) applies rooflights should be at least 1.5 m from the compartment wall.

Table 5.9 TP(a) and TP(b) plastic rooflights Limitations on use and boundary distance			
Minimum classification on lower surface ⁽¹⁾	Space which rooflight can serve	Minimum distance (m) from any point on relevant boundary to rooflight with an external surface classification of	
		TP(a)	TP(b)
1 TP(a) rigid	Any space except a protected stairway	6 ⁽²⁾	Not applicable
2 TP(b)	(a) Balcony, verandah, carport, covered way or loading bay which has at least one longer side wholly or permanently open (b) Detached swimming pool (c) Conservatory, garage or outbuilding, with a maximum floor area of 40 m ²	Not applicable	6
	(d) Circulation space ⁽⁴⁾ (except a protected stairway) (e) Room ⁽⁴⁾	Not applicable	6 ⁽³⁾

Notes:

(1) As required by paragraph 3.14.

(2) No limit in the case of any space described in items 2(a), (b) and (c).

(3) The rooflight should also comply with Diagram 5.6.

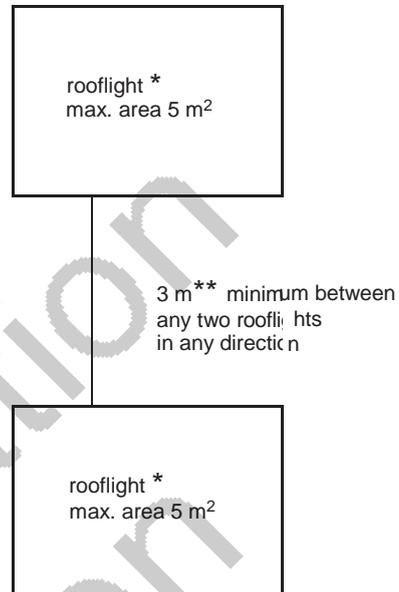
(4) Single skin rooflight only, in the case of non-thermoplastic materials.

Rooflights may have upper and lower surfaces with different properties if they have double skins or are laminates of different materials – in which case the more onerous distance applies.

Where paragraph 4.21(a) applies rooflights should be at least 1.5 m from the compartment wall.

Diagram 5.6 Limitation on areas and spacing of certain thermoplastic rooflights

see Table 5.8 note (2), Table 5.9 note (3)



Notes:

- * Or group of rooflights amounting to not more than 5 m².
 - ** Class 3 (National class) or Class D-s3,d2 (European class) rooflights to rooms in non-residential purpose groups may be spaced 1.8 m apart provided that the rooflights are evenly distributed and do not exceed 20% of the floor area of the room.
- 1 Surrounding roof covering to be a material of limited combustibility for at least 3 m distance.
 - 2 Where paragraph 4.21(a) applies rooflights should be not less than 1.5 m from the compartment wall.

- 6.1 This Section contains provisions to ensure that there is –
- (a) sufficient means of access to and within a building for firefighting personnel to effect rescue and fight fire;
 - (b) sufficient facilities to assist firefighters in their tasks;
 - (c) adequate means of venting smoke from a fire in a basement; and
 - (d) adequate external access to enable firefighting appliances to be brought near to a building for effective use.

Firefighting shafts

6.2 In low rise buildings without deep basements fire and rescue personnel access requirements will be met by a combination of the normal means of escape in the building and the measures for vehicle access in accordance with paragraphs 6.19 and 6.20. In other buildings including high rise buildings and those with deep basements the problems of reaching the fire and working inside the building near the fire, necessitate the provision of additional facilities to avoid delay and to provide a sufficiently secure operating base to allow effective action to be taken. These additional facilities include firefighting lifts, firefighting stairs and firefighting lobbies which are combined in a protected shaft known as a firefighting shaft.

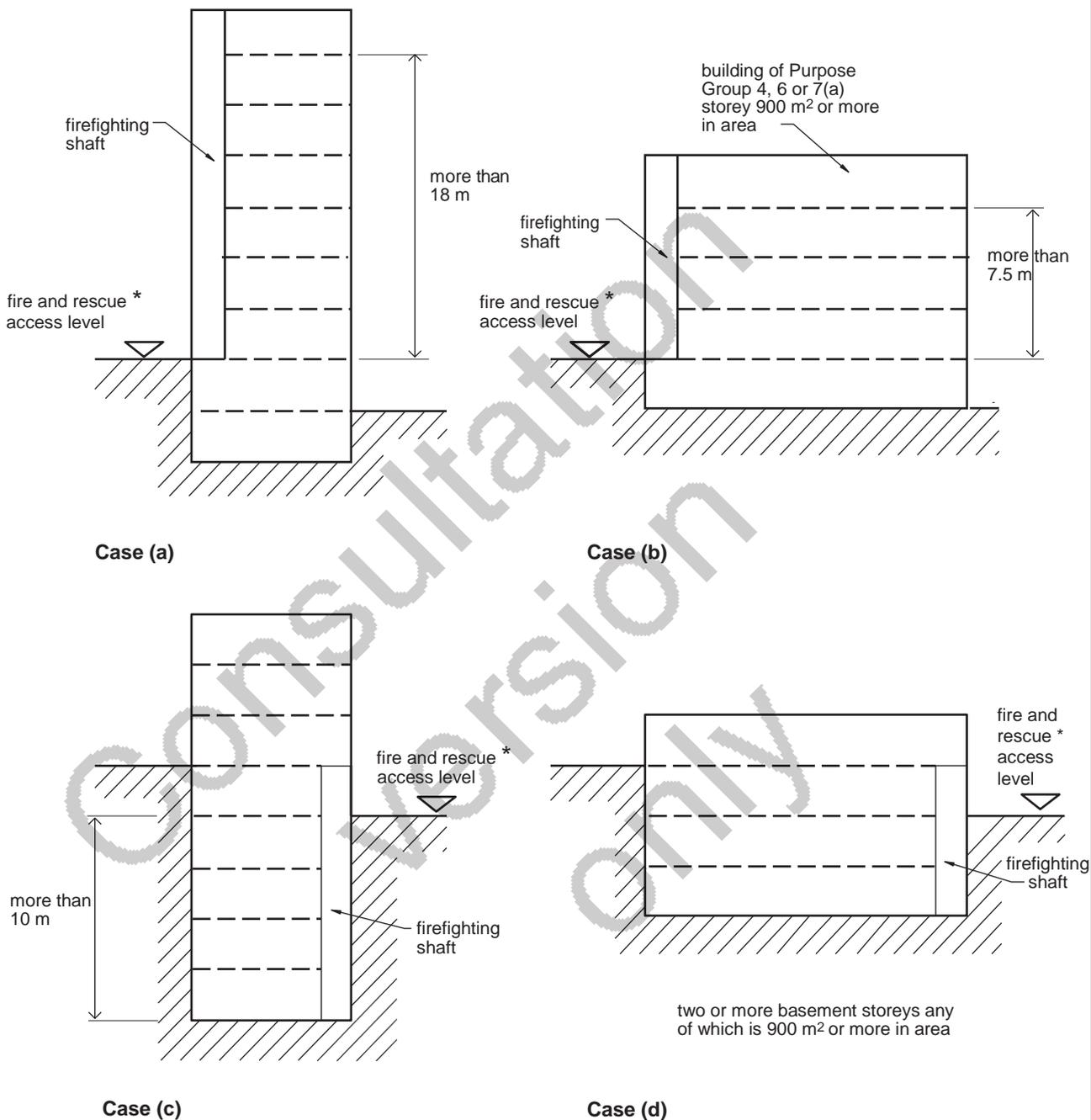
- 6.3 A shopping complex should be provided with firefighting shafts in accordance with the recommendations of BS 5588-10 Section 3. Any other building should be provided with a firefighting shaft or shafts, to serve all storeys, where –
- (a) it has a storey more than 18 m above fire and rescue access level;
 - (b) it is a building of Purpose Group 4, 6 or 7(a) and has a storey 900 m² or more in area at a height of 7.5 m or more above fire and rescue access level;
 - (c) it has a storey more than 10 m below fire and rescue access level; or
 - (d) it has two or more basement storeys any of which is 900 m² or more in area.

However, a firefighting shaft provided under (a) or (b) need not serve a basement storey unless (c) or (d) applies and similarly a firefighting shaft provided under (c) or (d) need not serve an upper storey unless (a) or (b) applies.

Diagram 6.1 illustrates the provisions of this paragraph.

Diagram 6.1 Provision of firefighting shafts

see para 6.3



Notes:

* When measuring the height to an upper storey the highest level at which the Fire and Rescue Service can gain access should be used and similarly when measuring the depth of a basement storey the lowest level should be used.

1. In cases (a) and (c) the firefighting shaft should include a firefighting lift.

- 6.4 Where a building is to be provided with firefighting shafts the minimum number (subject to paragraph 6.5) should be –
- (a) where a building is fitted throughout with an automatic sprinkler system complying with the relevant recommendations of BS 5306-2 or BS EN 12845 as given in Table 6.1 for the appropriate floor area; or
 - (b) where a building is not fitted throughout with such a sprinkler system – at least one for every 900 m², (or part thereof) of floor area of the largest storey given in paragraph 6.3(a) to (d) as appropriate.
- 6.5 Firefighting shafts should be located so that every part of every storey (other than fire and rescue access level) is not more than 60 m from a fire main outlet, measured on a route suitable for laying a fire hose (hose route). Where the internal layout is unknown every part of every such storey should be not more than 40 m, in a direct line, from a fire main outlet.
- 6.6 Firefighting shafts should be designed and constructed in accordance with the relevant recommendations of BS 5588-5.

Where a building falls within paragraph 6.3(a) or (c) all firefighting shafts should have a firefighting lift complying with the relevant recommendations of BS 5588-5. A firefighting lift installation includes the lift car itself, the lift well and the lift machinery space, together with the lift communication system. The firefighting lift installation should conform with BS EN 81-1 or BS EN 81-2 as appropriate for the particular type of lift and BS EN 81-72.

However, in a Purpose Group 1(a) (flat) building it is not necessary for a firefighting shaft to have firefighting lobbies provided that –

- (a) the firefighting stair opens directly into a protected lobby or protected corridor provided for means of escape; and
- (b) where the firefighting shaft has a firefighting lift – the lift opens directly into a protected lobby or protected corridor provided for means of escape and the lift landing doors are not more than 7.5 m from the door to the firefighting stair.

Table 6.1 Minimum number of firefighting shafts in a building fitted with a sprinkler system

Floor area of the largest storey (m ²)	Minimum number of firefighting shafts
Less than 900	1
900 to 2000	2
Over 2000	2 plus 1 for every 1500 m ² or part thereof of floor area

Fire mains

- 6.7 Fire mains are installed in a building and equipped with valves, etc., so that the Fire and Rescue Service may connect hoses for water to fight fires inside the building. Rising fire mains serve floors above ground, or upwards from the level at which the Fire and Rescue Service gain access (called the fire and rescue access level) if this is not ground level. Falling mains serve levels below fire and rescue access level.

Fire mains may be of the dry type which are normally empty and are supplied through hose from a fire and rescue pumping appliance. Alternatively, they may be of the wet type where they are kept full of water and supplied from tanks and pumps in the building. There should be a facility to allow a wet system to be replenished from a pumping appliance in an emergency.

- 6.8 A firefighting shaft should be provided with –
- (a) a wet fire main where it has a storey more than 60 m above fire and rescue access level; or
 - (b) a wet or a dry fire main in any other case.
- 6.9 The fire main should be located in the firefighting lobbies of the firefighting shaft and should have an outlet connection and valve at every level other than at fire and rescue access level. However, where firefighting lobbies are not provided in a Purpose Group 1(a) building the fire main should be located in the firefighting stairway.
- 6.10 The design and construction of a fire main should be in accordance with the relevant recommendations of BS 9990.

Provisions for vehicle access are given in paragraph 6.19.

Venting of heat and smoke from basements

- 6.11 The build-up of smoke and heat as a result of a fire can seriously inhibit the ability of the Fire and Rescue Service to carry out rescue and firefighting operations in a basement. The problem can be reduced by providing venting facilities to make conditions tenable by providing a route for smoke and heat to escape to the open air from the basement level. These facilities can also be used by the Fire and Rescue Service to let cooler air into the basement.
- 6.12 Venting facilities, connected directly to the external air, should be provided from every basement storey other than –
- (a) a basement in a building of Purpose Group 1(b) or (c);
 - (b) a basement storey which –
 - (i) has a floor area not more than 200 m²; or
 - (ii) has a floor not more than 3 m below the lowest adjacent ground level;
 - (c) a basement storey used for car parking and ventilated in accordance with paragraph 4.50; and
 - (d) a basement storey or that part of a basement storey used as a strong room.

-
- 6.13 Where basements have external doors or windows, the compartments containing the rooms with these doors or windows do not need smoke outlets. It is common for basements to be open to the air on one or more elevations. This may be the result of different ground levels on different sides of the building.

Natural venting

- 6.14 A basement storey may be ventilated by smoke outlets which should –
- (a) be sited at ceiling level within the space they serve;
 - (b) have an aggregate free area of not less than 2.5% of the floor area of the space they serve;
 - (c) be distributed as evenly as possible around the perimeter of the building;
 - (d) be located so that they do not adversely affect any escape route from the building; and
 - (e) have a sign stating “smoke outlet from basement” fixed adjacent to each external outlet point.

The smoke outlets from a place of special fire hazard should be separate from the smoke outlets from other areas.

- 6.15 Smoke outlets may discharge by means of windows, stall-board risers or pavement lights which can be opened or knocked out provided such covers are readily accessible to the Fire and Rescue Service.

Shafts enclosing smoke outlets should be of smoke tight non-combustible construction and have the same period of fire resistance as that for elements of structure in the basement storey served.

Shafts from different parts of the same basement storey, or from different basement storeys, should be separated by smoke tight non-combustible fire-resisting construction.

Mechanical venting

- 6.16 A basement may be ventilated by a mechanical air extraction system provided –
- (a) the basement has a sprinkler system complying with the relevant recommendations of BS 5306-2 or BS EN 12845; and
 - (b) the air extraction system has a capacity of not less than 10 air changes per hour and is capable of operating at a temperature of 300°C for not less than 60 minutes.

The air extraction system should come into operation automatically on the activation of either –

- (i) the sprinkler system; or
- (ii) the fire detection and fire alarm system in the basement where this system complies with BS 5839-1, of at least Category L3 standard.

Rolling shutters in compartment walls

- 6.17 A rolling shutter in a compartment wall should be provided with a suitable operating mechanism so that it can be opened and closed manually by the Fire and Rescue Service.

Vehicle access

- 6.18 For the purposes of this Section vehicle access to the exterior of a building is needed to enable high reach appliances, such as turntable ladders and hydraulic platforms to be used, and to enable pumping appliances to supply water and equipment for firefighting and rescue purposes.
- 6.19 The provisions for vehicle access are related to whether or not the building has a fire main or mains and, where it does not, to the size and height of the building. Where a building –
- (a) does not have a fire main and is a block of flats, access for a pump appliance should be provided to within 45 m (hose route) of each door giving access to each individual dwelling;
 - (b) does not have a fire main, is not a block of flats and is less than 2000 m² in area and the height to the top storey is less than 11 m, access for a pump appliance should be –
 - (i) provided to within 45 m (hose route) of the building other than for a dwellinghouse where the 45 m should be to a door giving access to the interior; or
 - (ii) provided to 15% of the perimeter;
 - (c) does not have a fire main and is other than as described in (a) and (b), access should be provided in accordance with Table 6.2;
 - (d) has dry fire mains, access for a pumping appliance should be provided to within 18 m, and within sight of, each fire main inlet connection point; and
 - (e) has wet fire mains, access for a pumping appliance should be provided to within 18 m, and within sight of the emergency replenishment inlet of the tank serving each fire main.

In every elevation to which fire and rescue access is provided, there should be a door not less than 750 mm wide, giving access to the interior of the building. Where fire mains are provided a door should give access to each fire main.

[Note – the Building Regulations cannot impose requirements for work to be done beyond the boundary of the premises.]

Vehicle access routes and vehicular hardstandings areas

- 6.20 A vehicle access route and vehicular hardstanding area should be designed and constructed to the standards given in Table 6.3 and, in the case of those for high reach appliances, the dimensions shown in Diagram 6.2.

Where the height of the top storey of a building is more than 11 m above the level of the adjoining ground the vehicle access route and the vehicular hardstanding area should be suitable for a high reach appliance. For lower buildings a vehicle access route should be suitable for a pump appliance.

- 6.21 A turning facility should be provided in a dead end vehicle access route which is more than 20 m in length. This should be a hammerhead or turning circle –
- (a) designed on the basis of the dimensions given in Table 6.3; and
 - (b) located so that vehicles do not have to reverse more than 20 m.

Vehicular hardstanding areas should be as level as possible and should not exceed a gradient of 1 in 12.

Table 6.2 Fire and rescue vehicle access to buildings not fitted with fire mains

Area of building (m ²)	Height to top storey ⁽¹⁾ (m)	Provide vehicle access to	Type of appliance
Up to 2000	Up to 11 Over 11	See paragraph 6.19(b) 15% of perimeter ⁽²⁾	Pump High reach
2000-8000	Up to 11 Over 11	15% of perimeter ⁽²⁾ 50% of perimeter ⁽²⁾	Pump High reach
8000-16000	Up to 11 Over 11	50% of perimeter ⁽²⁾ 50% of perimeter ⁽²⁾	Pump High reach
16000-24000	Up to 11 Over 11	75% of perimeter ⁽²⁾ 75% of perimeter ⁽²⁾	Pump High reach
Over 24000	Up to 11 Over 11	100% of perimeter ⁽²⁾ 100% of perimeter ⁽²⁾	Pump High reach

Notes:

(1) For Purpose Group 7(a) buildings the height should be measured to the mean roof level.

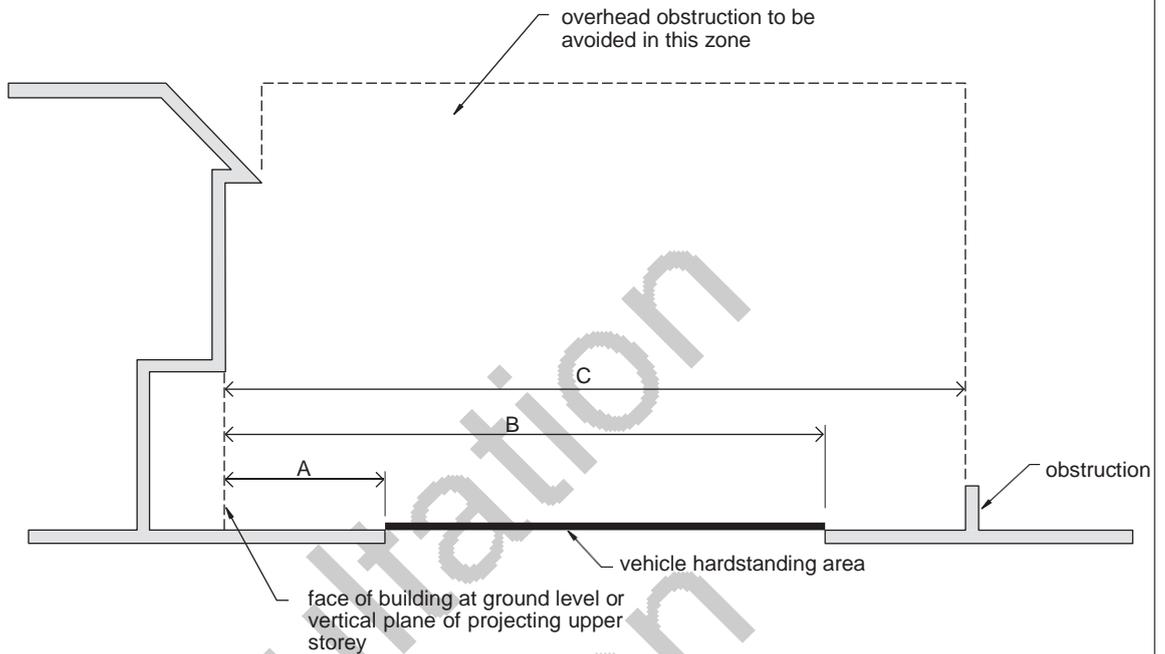
(2) The perimeter is the aggregate plan perimeter found by vertical projection onto a horizontal ground plane excluding walls separating buildings.

Table 6.3 Fire and rescue vehicle access routes

Appliance type	Minimum width of road between kerbs (m)	Minimum width of gateways (m)	Minimum turning circle between kerbs (m)	Minimum turning circle between walls (m)	Minimum clearance height (m)	Minimum carrying capacity (tonnes)
Pump	3.7	3.1	16.8	19.2	3.7	12.5
High reach	3.7	3.1	26.0	29.0	4.0	17.0

Diagram 6.2 Relationship between a building and a vehicle access route or a vehicular hardstanding area for a high reach appliance

see para 6.20



Dimensions

- A maximum distance* to near edge of vehicle hardstanding area
- B minimum distance to farthest edge of vehicle hardstanding area
- C minimum width of unobstructed space

Type of appliance

	Hydraulic platform (m)	Turntable ladder (m)
A	2.0	4.9
B	7.5	10.0
C	9.7	10.0

Note:

- * The hardstanding may extend closer to the building but any such extension should not be considered as a vehicle hardstanding area.

- A1 The provisions of this Section should apply when using Sections 2 to 6 of this Technical Booklet.

Purpose groups

- A2 As many of the provisions in this Technical Booklet are related to the use of a building or compartment it is necessary to classify each building and compartment, according to its use, into a purpose group.

A building may have a single use or it may have many uses. Sub-paragraphs (b) and (c) describe the circumstances where it is appropriate to treat a different use as a purpose group in its own right. (Note that the provisions of paragraph 4.17 require compartmentation between different purpose groups.)

Every building and compartment should be classified according to its use, or intended use, into the most appropriate of those purpose groups given in Table A.1 and –

- (a) where the use of a building or compartment will vary from time to time, it should be classified as the purpose group to which the more or most onerous provisions in Section 4 apply;
- (b) where a building or compartment has one or more uses which are not ancillary to the main use of that building or compartment, each portion given over to a separate use should be classified separately; and
- (c) where the building or compartment has one or more uses which are ancillary to the main use of that building or compartment, each portion given over to an ancillary use should be classified separately when –
 - (i) it is a flat;
 - (ii) in a Purpose Group 4 building or compartment more than 280 m² in floor area – it is storage occupying more than one third of the total floor area of the building or compartment; or
 - (iii) in a building or compartment of any purpose group more than 280 m² in floor area – it is a use [other than in (i) and (ii)] occupying more than one fifth of the total floor area of the building or compartment.

Table A.1 Classification of purpose groups

Title	Group	Purpose for which the building or compartment of a building is intended to be used
Residential** (Dwellings)	1(a)	Flat
	1(b)	Dwellinghouse which contains a habitable storey with a floor level which is more than 4.5 m above ground level
	1(c)	Dwellinghouse which does not contain a habitable storey with a floor level which is more than 4.5 m above ground level
Residential (Institutional)	2(a)	Hospital, nursing home, home for old people or for children, school or other similar establishment used as living accommodation or for the treatment, care or maintenance of people suffering from illness or mental or physical disability, place of detention, where such people sleep on the premises
(Other)	2(b)	Hotel, boarding house, residential college, hall of residence, hostel, house in multiple occupation, and any other residential purpose not described above
Office	3	Offices or premises used for the purpose of administration, clerical work (including writing, book keeping, sorting papers, filing, typing, duplicating, machine calculating, drawing and the editorial preparation of matter for publication, police and fire service work), handling money (including banking and building society work), and communications (including postal, telegraph and radio communications) or radio, television, film, audio or video recording, or performance (not open to the public) and their control
Shop and Commercial	4	Shops or premises used for a retail trade or business (including the sale to members of the public of food or drink for immediate consumption and retail by auction, self-selection and over-the-counter wholesale trading, the business of lending books or periodicals for gain and the business of a barber or hairdresser) and premises to which the public is invited to deliver or to collect goods in connection with their hire, repair or other treatment, or (except in the case of repair of motor vehicles) where they themselves may carry out such repairs or other treatments
Assembly and Recreation	5	Place of assembly, entertainment or recreation, including bingo halls, broadcasting, recording and film studios open to the public, casinos, dance halls, entertainment, conference, exhibition and leisure centres, funfairs and amusement arcades, museums and art galleries, non-residential clubs, theatres, cinemas and concert halls, educational establishments, dancing schools, gymnasia, swimming pool buildings, riding schools, skating rinks, sports pavilions, sports stadia, law courts, churches and other buildings for worship, crematoria, libraries open to the public, non-residential day centres, clinics, health centres and surgeries, passenger stations and termini for air, rail, road or sea travel, public toilets, zoos and menageries
Industrial	6	Factories and other premises used for manufacturing, altering, repairing, cleaning, washing, breaking-up, adapting or processing any article, generating power, or slaughtering livestock
Storage and other non-residential ⁺	7(a)	Place for the storage or deposit of goods or materials [other than described under 7(b)] and any building not within any of the Purpose Groups 1 to 6
	7(b)	Car parks designed to admit and accommodate only cars, motorcycles and passenger or light goods vehicles weighing no more than 2500 kg gross

Notes:

* Purpose Group **1** includes –

- (a) any surgeries, consulting rooms, offices or similar accommodation not more than 50 m² in total floor area, forming part of a dwelling and used by an occupant of the dwelling in a professional or business capacity; and
- (b) an attached garage not more than 40 m² in floor area.

+ A detached garage or open carport not more than 40 m² in floor area is included in Purpose Group **1(c)**; as is a detached building which consists of a garage and open carport where neither the garage nor open carport exceeds 40 m² in area.

Rules for measurement

- B.1 In this Technical Booklet the following rules for measurement apply –
- (a) The area of a roof, rooflight or floor should be measured as shown in Diagram B.1.
 - (b) The cubic capacity of a building, separated part or compartment should be measured (as shown in Diagram B.2) from –
 - (i) the upper surface of the lowest floor;
 - (ii) the under surface of roof or ceiling surface as appropriate; and
 - (iii) the inner surfaces of the enclosing walls or, where there is no enclosing wall, the outermost edge of the floor.

The volume of internal floors, walls and partitions should be included for calculation purposes.

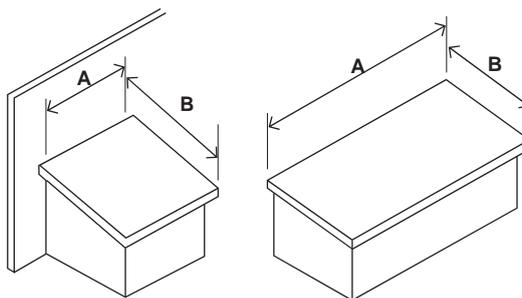
- (c) The number of storeys in a building or a separated part of a building should be counted as shown in Diagram B.3, and should exclude basement storeys.

In a building of Purpose Group 5 a gallery (other than a loading gallery, fly gallery, stage grid, lighting bridge, or any gallery used for similar purposes, or provided for the purposes of maintenance or repair) should be counted as a storey. In a building of any other purpose group a gallery should not be counted as a storey.

- (d) The height of a building should be measured as shown in Diagram B.4.
- (e) The height to a storey (other than when measuring for firefighting shaft purposes) should be measured from the lowest ground level adjacent to the building to the upper surface of the floor in that storey, as shown in Diagram B.5.
- (f) The depth of a basement (other than when measuring for firefighting shaft purposes) should be measured from the highest ground level adjacent to the building to the upper surface of the floor of the lowest basement storey as shown in Diagram B.5.
- (g) The width of a doorway should be measured as the clear width when the door is open as shown in Diagram B.6.
- (h) The width of an escape route should be measured at 1.5 m above floor level or pitch line. The projection of handrails, if less than 100 mm, and stringers, skirtings and architraves if less than 30 mm, on either or both sides should be ignored.

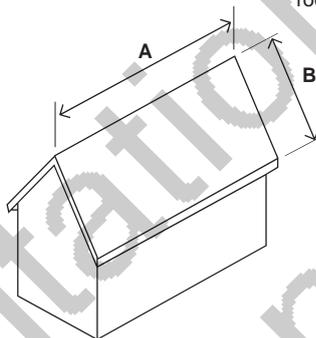
Diagram B.1 Areas

see para B.1(a)

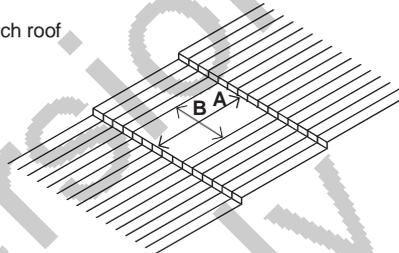


(i) Lean-to roof

(ii) Flat or monopitch roof

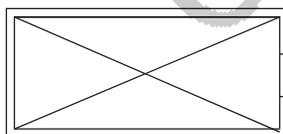


(iii) Double pitch roof

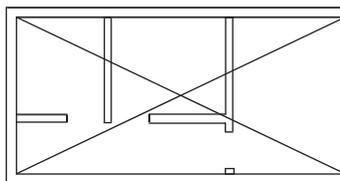


(iv) Rooflight

(a) Surface area – roofs and rooflights – in each case measure the visible area



(i) Building or room

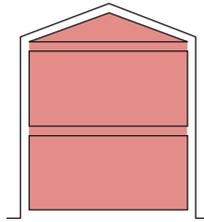


(ii) Storey, separated part or compartment

(b) Floor area – in each case measure to the internal surface of enclosing walls and include internal walls and partitions

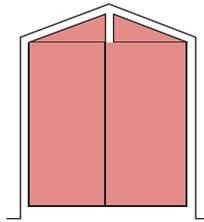
Diagram B.2 Cubic capacity

see para B.1(b)



section

(a) Building

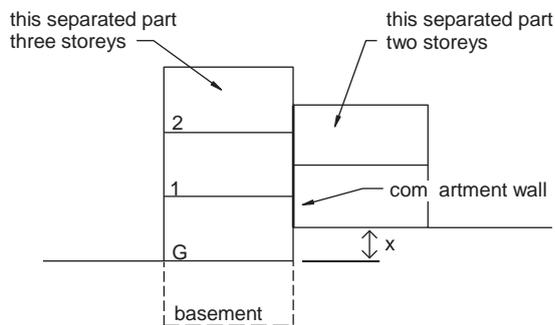
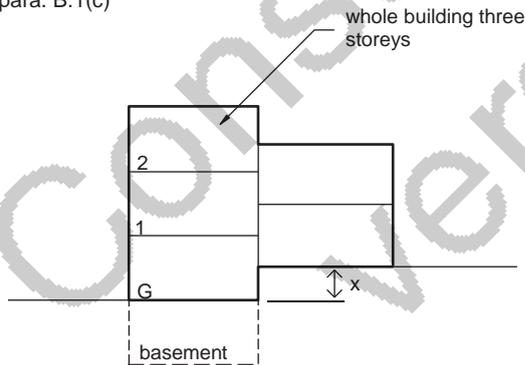


section

(b) Separated part or compartment of a building

Diagram B.3 Number of storeys

see para. B.1(c)

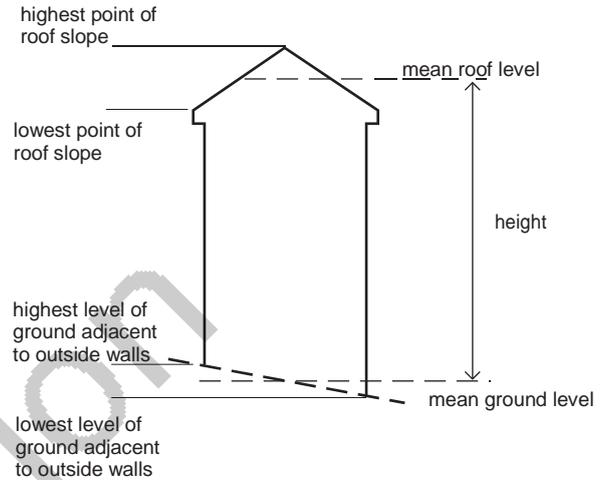


Notes:

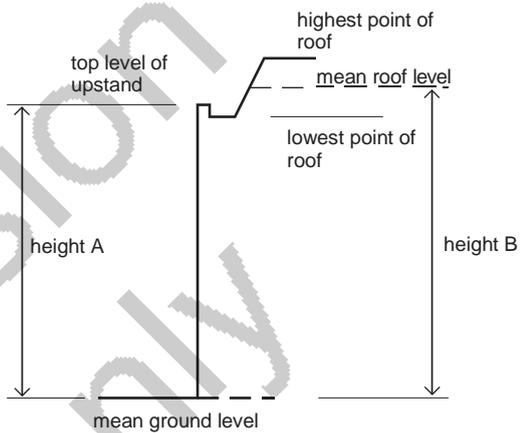
- 1 Count at the position which gives the greatest number of storeys.
- 2 Where X exceeds 1.2 m the building or separated part is considered to have two basement storeys and therefore be a two storey building.

Diagram B.4 Height of a building

see para B.1(d)

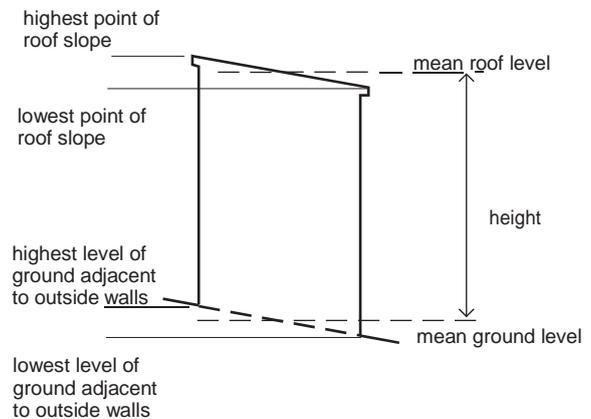


(a) Double pitch roof



use height A or B whichever is greater

(b) Mansard type roof



(c) Flat or monopitch roof

Diagram B.5 Height to a storey and depth of a basement

see para B.1(e) and B.1(f)

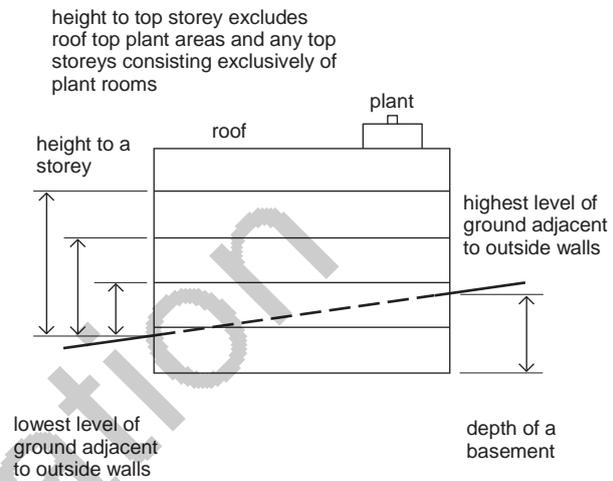
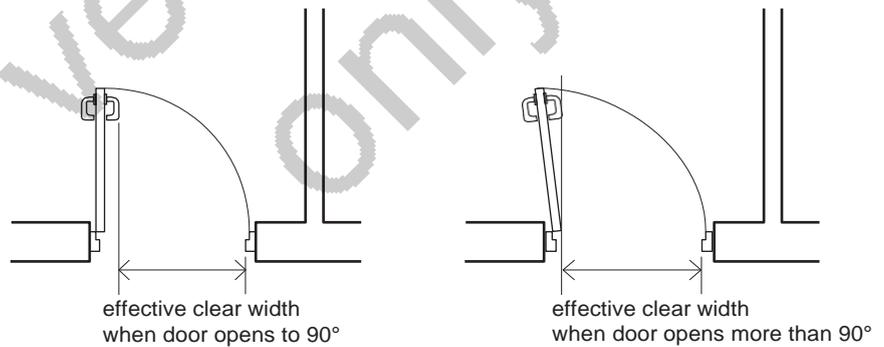


Diagram B.6 Width of a doorway

see paras 2.92 and B.1(g)



BS EN ISO 306: 2004 Plastics. Thermoplastic materials. Determination of Vicat softening temperature (VST).

BS EN ISO 1182: 2002 Reaction to fire tests for building products. Non-combustibility test.

BS EN ISO 1716: 2002 Reaction to fire tests for building products. Determination of the heat of combustion.

BS EN ISO 11925 Reaction to fire tests. Ignitability of building products subjected to direct impingement of flame

Part 2: 2002 Single-flame source test.

BS EN 54-11: 2001 Fire detection and fire alarm systems

Part 11: 2001 Manual call points

AMD 16126 June 2006

AMD 16487 June 2006.

BS EN 81-1: 1998 Safety rules for the construction and installation of lifts

Part 1: Electric lifts.

BS EN 81-2: 1998 Safety rules for the construction and installation of lifts

Part 2: Hydraulic lifts.

BS EN 81-58: 2003 Safety rules for the construction and installation of lifts. Examination and tests.

Part 58: Landing doors fire resistance test.

BS EN 81-72: 2003 Safety rules for the construction and installation of lifts. Particular applications for passenger and goods passenger lifts

Part 72: Firefighters lifts.

BS EN 771-3: 2003 Specification for masonry units

Part 3: 2003 Aggregate concrete masonry units (dense and lightweight aggregates)

AMD 16001 February 2006.

BS EN 1125: 2008 Building hardware. Panic exit devices operated by a horizontal bar, for use on escape routes. Requirements and test methods.

BS EN 1363 Fire resistance tests

Part 1: 1999 General requirements

Part 2: 1999 Alternative and additional procedures.

BS EN 1364 Fire resistance tests for non-loadbearing elements

Part 1: 1999 Walls

Part 2: 1999 Ceilings.

BS EN 1365 Fire resistance tests for loadbearing elements

Part 1: 1999 Walls

Part 2: 2000 Floors and roofs

Part 3: 2000 Beams

Part 4: 1999 Columns.

BS EN 1366 Fire resistance tests for service installations

Part 1: 1999 Ducts

Part 2: 1999 Fire dampers.

BS EN 1634: 2004 Fire resistance and smoke control tests for door and shutter assemblies, openable windows and elements of building hardware

Part 3: Smoke control test for door and shutter assemblies.

BS EN 1634: 2008 Fire resistance and smoke control tests for door, shutter and openable window assemblies and elements of building hardware

Part 1: Fire resistance tests for doors, shutters and openable windows.

Part 2: Fire resistance characterisation test for elements of building hardware.

BS EN 12101-6: 2005 Smoke and heat control systems

Part 6: Specification for pressure differential systems. Kits.

BS EN 12845: 2004 Fixed firefighting systems. Automatic sprinkler systems. Design, installation and maintenance.

BS EN 13238: 2001 Reaction to fire tests for building products. Conditioning procedures and general rules for selection of substrates.

BS EN 13501 Fire classification of construction products and building elements

Part 1: 2007 Classification using test data from reaction to fire tests

Part 2: 2007 Classification using data from fire resistance tests, excluding ventilation services

Part 3: 2005 Classification using data from fire resistance tests on products and elements used in building service installations: fire resisting ducts and fire dampers

Part 5: 2005 Classification using data from external fire exposure to roofs tests.

BS EN 13823: 2002 Reaction to fire tests for building products. Building products excluding floorings exposed to the thermal attack by a single burning item.

BS EN 15725:2010 Extended application reports on fire performance of construction products and building elements

BS EN 50200: 2006 Method of test for resistance to fire of unprotected small cables for use in emergency circuits.

DD ENV 1187: 2002, test 4 Test methods for external fire exposure to roofs

AMD 16344 May 2006.

BS 476: Fire tests on building materials and structures

Part 3: 1958 External fire exposure roof test

Part 3: 2004 Classification and method of test for external fire exposure to roofs

Part 4: 1970 (1984) Non-combustibility test for materials

AMD 2483 March 1978

AMD 4390 September 1983

Part 6: 1981 Method of test for fire propagation for products

AMD 4329

Part 6: 1989 Method of test for fire propagation for products

Part 7: 1971 Surface spread of flame tests for materials

Part 7: 1987 (1993) Method for classification of the surface spread of flame of products

AMD 6249 January 1990

AMD 7030 January 1992

AMD 7612 April 1993

Part 7: 1997 Method of test to determine the classification of the surface spread of flame of products

Part 8: 1972 Test methods and criteria for the fire resistance of elements of building construction

AMD 1873 January 1976

AMD 3816 November 1981

AMD 4822 May 1985

Part 11: 1982 (1988) Method for assessing the heat emission from building materials

Part 20: 1987 Method for determination of the fire resistance of elements of construction (general principles)

AMD 6487 April 1990

Part 21: 1987 Methods for determination of the fire resistance of loadbearing elements of construction

Part 22: 1987 Methods for determination of the fire resistance of non-loadbearing elements of construction

Part 23: 1987 Methods for determination of the contribution of components to the fire resistance of a structure

Part 24: 1987 Method for determination of the fire resistance of ventilation ducts

Section 31.1: 1983 Methods for measuring smoke penetration through doorsets and shutter assemblies.

AMD 8366

BS 747: 1977 (1986) Specification for roofing felts

AMD 3775 November 1981

AMD 4609 February 1985

AMD 5101 February 1986.

BS 2782: Method of testing plastic

Part 0: 2004 Introduction.

BS 4514: 1983 Specification for unplasticized PVC soil and ventilating pipes, fittings and accessories

AMD 4517 June 1984

AMD 5584 November 1987.

BS 5255: 1989 Specification for thermoplastics waste pipe and fittings.

BS 5266: Emergency lighting

Part 1: 2005 Code of practice for the emergency lighting of premises.

BS 5306: Fire extinguishing installations and equipment on premises

Part 1: 1976 (1988) Hydrant systems, hose reels and foam inlets

AMD 4649 August 1984

AMD 5756 February 1988

Part 2: 1990 Specification for sprinkler systems

AMD 9809 January 1998

AMD 9985 April 1998.

BS 5395: Stairs, ladders and walkways

Part 2: 1984 Code of practice for the design of helical and spiral stairs

AMD 6076 July 1989.

BS 5438: 1989 Methods of test for flammability of textile fabrics when subjected to a small igniting flame applied to the face or bottom edge of vertically oriented specimens

AMD 6509 June 1990

AMD 8308 December 1994.

BS 5446: Fire detection and fire alarm devices for dwellings

Part 1: 2000 Specifications for smoke alarms

Part 2: 2003 Specification for heat alarms.

BS 5499: Graphical symbols and signs – Safety signs, including fire safety signs

Part 1: 2002 Specification for geometric shapes, colours and layout

Part 4: 2000 Code of practice for escape route signing

AMD 12082 November 2000.

BS 5588: Fire precautions in the design, construction and use of buildings

Part 1: 1990 Code of practice for residential buildings

AMD 7840 September 1993

AMD 14988 December 2004

Part 4: 1998 Code of practice for smoke control using pressure differentials

AMD 10019 April 1998

AMD 13868 December 2002

AMD 14989 December 2004

Part 5: 2004 Access and facilities for fire-fighting

Part 6: 1991 Code of practice for places of assembly

AMD 10212 December 1998

AMD 10443 August 1999

AMD 14990 December 2004

Part 7: 1997 Code of practice for the incorporation of atria in buildings

AMD 10546 August 1999

AMD 14991 December 2004

Part 8: 1999 Code of practice for means of escape for disabled people

AMD 14992 December 2004

Part 9: 1999 Code of practice for ventilation and air conditioning ductwork

AMD 14993 December 2004

Part 10: 1991 Code of practice for shopping complexes

AMD 14994 December 2004.

BS 5839: Fire detection and fire alarm systems for buildings

Part 1: 2002 + A2: 2008 Code of practice for system design, installation, commissioning and maintenance

AMD 15447 December 2004

A2 March 2008

Part 3: 1988 Specification for automatic release mechanisms for certain fire protection equipment

AMD 10207 November 1998

AMD 17256 July 2007

Part 6: 2004 Code of practice for the design, installation and maintenance of fire detection and fire alarm systems in dwellings

Part 8: 1998 Code of practice for the design, installation, commissioning and maintenance of voice alarm systems

Part 9: 2003 Code of practice for the design, installation, commissioning and maintenance of emergency voice communication systems.

BS 5867: Specification for fabrics for curtains and drapes

Part 2: 1980 (1993) Flammability requirements

AMD 4319 July 1983.

BS 5950: Structural use of steelwork in building

Part 8: 2003 Code of practice for fire resistant design.

BS 6387: 1994 Specification for performance requirements for cables required to maintain circuit integrity under fire conditions.

BS 7346: Components for smoke and heat control systems

Part 6: 2005 Specification for cable systems.

BS 7974: 2001 Application of fire safety engineering principles to the design of buildings – Code of practice.

BS 8414-1:2020 Fire performance of external cladding systems. Test method for non-loadbearing external cladding systems fixed to, and supported by, a masonry substrate.

BS 8414-2:2020 Fire performance of external cladding systems. Test method for non-loadbearing external cladding systems fixed to, and supported by, a structural steel frame.

BS 9990: 2006 Code of practice for non-automatic fire-fighting systems in buildings.

BS 9999: 2008 Code of practice for fire safety in the design, management and use of buildings.

BR 128: 1988 Guidelines for the construction of fire-resisting structural elements.

BR 135: 1988 2013 Fire performance of external thermal insulation for walls of multi-storey buildings.

BR 187: 1991 External fire spread: building separation and boundary distances.

BR 368: 1999 Design methodologies for smoke and heat exhaust ventilation.

Building Bulletin 100: Design for fire safety in schools: published by the Department for Children, schools and families.

DOE Circular 12/92 Houses in multiple occupation.

The Fire and Rescue Services (Northern Ireland) Order 2006.

The Fire Safety Regulations (Northern Ireland) 2010.

Guide to fire precautions in premises used as hotels and boarding houses which require a fire certificate: published by the Home Office.

The International Association of Cold Storage Contractors (European Division): Design, construction, specification and fire management of insulated envelopes for temperature controlled environments: Second Edition 2008.

The Northern Ireland Guide to safety at sports grounds: 2007 published by the Department of Culture, Arts and Leisure.

Northern Ireland Firecode: November 2010.

Safety signs and signals: guidance on regulations: Second edition 2009: published by Health and Safety Executive.

The Steel Construction Institute 2002: Fire and steel construction: Single Storey Steel Framed Buildings in Fire Boundary Conditions.

Consultation
Version
only

Technical Booklets

The following list comprises the series of Technical Booklets prepared by the Department for the purpose of providing practical guidance with respect to the technical requirements of the Building Regulations (Northern Ireland) 2012 (as amended).

Technical Booklet B	Materials and workmanship
Technical Booklet C	Preparation of site and resistance to contaminants and moisture
Technical Booklet D	Structure
Technical Booklet E	Fire safety
Technical Booklet F1	Conservation of fuel and power in dwellings
Technical Booklet F2	Conservation of fuel and power in buildings other than dwellings
Technical Booklet G	Resistance to the passage of sound
Technical Booklet H	Stairs, ramps, guarding and protection from impact
Technical Booklet J	Solid waste in buildings
Technical Booklet K	Ventilation
Technical Booklet L	Combustion appliances and fuel storage systems
Technical Booklet M	Physical infrastructure for high-speed electronic communications network
Technical Booklet N	Drainage
Technical Booklet P	Sanitary appliances, unvented hot water storage systems and reducing the risk of scalding
Technical Booklet R	Access to and use of buildings
Technical Booklet V	Glazing

Any person who intends to demonstrate compliance with the Building Regulations by following the guidance given in a Technical Booklet is advised to ensure that the guidance is current on the date when plans are deposited or notice given to the district council.